

ISO 20022

## Bank-to-Customer Cash Management - Maintenance 2020 - 2021

# Message Definition Report - Part 2

For evaluation by the Payments SEG

This document provides details of the Message Definitions for Bank-to-Customer Cash Management - Maintenance 2020 - 2021.

December 2020

# Table of Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Message Set Overview</b>	3
1.1	List of MessageDefinitions	3
<b>2</b>	<b>DRAFT1camt.052.001.09 BankToCustomerAccountReportV09</b>	4
2.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	4
2.2	Structure	5
2.3	Constraints	5
2.4	Message Building Blocks	7
<b>3</b>	<b>DRAFT1camt.053.001.09 BankToCustomerStatementV09</b>	18
3.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	18
3.2	Structure	19
3.3	Constraints	19
3.4	Message Building Blocks	21
<b>4</b>	<b>DRAFT1camt.054.001.09 BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotificationV09</b>	32
4.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	32
4.2	Structure	33
4.3	Constraints	33
4.4	Message Building Blocks	35
<b>5</b>	<b>DRAFT1camt.060.001.06 AccountReportingRequestV06</b>	45
5.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	45
5.2	Structure	46
5.3	Constraints	46
5.4	Message Building Blocks	47
<b>6</b>	<b>Message Items Types</b>	55
6.1	MessageComponents	55
6.2	Message Datatypes	306

# 1 Message Set Overview

## Introduction

The Bank-to-Customer message set provides the messages used to request and provide account information for reconciliation and cash positioning between an account servicer and its customer.

It includes only the new versions of the MessageDefinitions that have been impacted by the maintenance cycle 2020/2021 (MCR #170).

## 1.1 List of MessageDefinitions

The following table lists all MessageDefinitions described in this book.

MessageDefinition	Definition
DRAFT1camt.052.001.09 BankToCustomerAccountReportV09	The BankToCustomerAccountReport message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It can be used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of the entries reported to the account, and/or to provide the owner with balance information on the account at a given point in time.
DRAFT1camt.053.001.09 BankToCustomerStatementV09	The BankToCustomerStatement message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It is used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of the entries booked to the account, and to provide the owner with balance information on the account at a given point in time.
DRAFT1camt.054.001.09 BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotificationV09	The BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It can be used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of single or multiple debit and/or credit entries reported to the account.
DRAFT1camt.060.001.06 AccountReportingRequestV06	The AccountReportingRequest message is sent by the account owner, either directly or through a forwarding agent, to one of its account servicing institutions. It is used to ask the account servicing institution to send a report on the account owner's account in a BankToCustomerAccountReport (camt.052), a BankToCustomerStatement (camt.053) or a BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification (camt.054).

## 2 **DRAFT1camt.052.001.09** **BankToCustomerAccountReportV09**

### 2.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

#### Scope

The BankToCustomerAccountReport message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It can be used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of the entries reported to the account, and/or to provide the owner with balance information on the account at a given point in time.

#### Usage

The BankToCustomerAccountReport message can contain reports for more than one account. It provides information for cash management and/or reconciliation. It can be used to:

- report pending and booked items;
- provide balance information.

It can include underlying details of transactions that have been included in the entry.

It is possible that the receiver of the message is not the account owner, but a party entitled by the account owner to receive the account information (also known as recipient).

For a statement, the Bank-to-Customer Account Statement message should be used.

#### Outline

The BankToCustomerAccountReportV09 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Common information for the message.

B. Report

Reports on a cash account.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 2.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <BkToCstmrAcctRpt>	[1..1]		C20, C24	
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]	±		7
	<b>Report</b> <Rpt>	[1..*]			8
	<b>Identification</b> <Id>	[1..1]	Text		9
	<b>ReportPagination</b> <RptPgtr>	[0..1]	±		9
	<b>ElectronicSequenceNumber</b> <ElctrncSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		9
	<b>ReportingSequence</b> <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		9
	<b>LegalSequenceNumber</b> <LglSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		10
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		10
	<b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		10
	<b>CopyDuplicateIndicator</b> <CpyDplctInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		10
	<b>ReportingSource</b> <RptgSrc>	[0..1]	±		10
	<b>Account</b> <Acct>	[1..1]	±	C16, C14	11
	<b>RelatedAccount</b> <RltdAcct>	[0..1]	±	C17, C15	11
	<b>Interest</b> <Intrst>	[0..*]	±		12
	<b>Balance</b> <Bal>	[0..*]	±	C12	13
	<b>TransactionsSummary</b> <TxsSummry>	[0..1]	±		14
	<b>Entry</b> <Ntry>	[0..*]	±	C22	15
	<b>AdditionalReportInformation</b> <AddtlRptInf>	[0..1]	Text		16
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C25	17

## 2.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**C3 AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C4 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C5 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C6 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C7 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C8 DescriptionPresenceRule**

If Description is not present then either ISIN or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

**C9 DescriptionUsageRule**

Description must be used alone as the last resort.

**C10 DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

**C11 FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

**C12 ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule**

If Type is equal to ForwardAvailable, Availability is not allowed.

**C13 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C14 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C15 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C16 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or proxy must be present.

**C17 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C18 ISINGuideline**

When an ISIN code exists, it is strongly recommended that the ISIN be used.

**C19 ISINPresenceRule**

If ISIN is not present then either Description or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

**C20 MessageOrReportPaginationRule**

MessagePagination may be present or ReportPagination may be present, but not both.

Following Must be True

```
/GroupHeader/MessagePagination Must be absent
Or    /Report[*]/ReportPagination Must be absent
```

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C21 OtherIdentificationPresenceRule**

If OtherIdentification is not present then either ISIN or Description must be present.

**C22 ReferenceGuideline**

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

**C23 ReturnReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

**C24 SupplementaryDataRule**

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C25 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 2.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 2.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Common information for the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following elements (see "GroupHeader81" on page 232 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		232
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		232
	MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>	[0..1]	±		232
	MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>	[0..1]	±		233
	OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>	[0..1]	±		233
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		233

## 2.4.2 Report <Rpt>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Reports on a cash account.

**Report <Rpt>** contains the following **AccountReport30** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		9
	ReportPagination <RptPgntn>	[0..1]	±		9
	ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrncSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		9
	ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		9
	LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		10
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		10
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		10
	CopyDuplicateIndicator <CpyDplctInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		10
	ReportingSource <RptgSrc>	[0..1]	±		10
	Account <Acct>	[1..1]	±	C16, C14	11
	RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>	[0..1]	±	C17, C15	11
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..*]	±		12
	Balance <Bal>	[0..*]	±	C12	13
	TransactionsSummary <Txsumry>	[0..1]	±		14
	Entry <Ntry>	[0..*]	±	C22	15
	AdditionalReportInformation <AddtlRptInf>	[0..1]	Text		16



**2.4.2.1 Identification <Id>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the account servicer, to unambiguously identify the account report.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**2.4.2.2 ReportPagination <RptPgntn>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Provides details on the page number of the report.

Usage: The pagination of the report is only allowed when agreed between the parties.

**ReportPagination <RptPgntn>** contains the following elements (see "Pagination1" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PageNumber <PgNb>	[1..1]	Text		235
	LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		235

**2.4.2.3 ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrncSeqNb>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Sequential number of the report, as assigned by the account servicer.

Usage: The sequential number is increased incrementally for each report sent electronically.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 332**2.4.2.4 ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the range of identification sequence numbers, as provided in the request.**ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>** contains one of the following elements (see "SequenceRange1Choice" on page 214 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	FromToSequence <FrToSeq>	[1..*]			215
	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	EqualSequence <EQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		216
Or}	NotEqualSequence <NEQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		216

**2.4.2.5 LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Legal sequential number of the report, as assigned by the account servicer. It is increased incrementally for each report sent.*Datatype:* "Number" on page 332**2.4.2.6 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Date and time at which the report was created.*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 329**2.4.2.7 FromToDate <FrToDt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the account report is issued.**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "DateTimePeriod1" on page 190 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		190
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		191

**2.4.2.8 CopyDuplicateIndicator <CpyDplctInd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Indicates whether the document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 312

CodeName	Name	Definition
CODU	CopyDuplicate	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent.
COPY	Copy	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.
DUPL	Duplicate	Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.

**2.4.2.9 ReportingSource <RptgSrc>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the application used to generate the reporting.

**ReportingSource <RptgSrc>** contains one of the following elements (see "[ReportingSource1Choice](#)" on page 214 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		214
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		214

#### 2.4.2.10 Account <Acct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account to which credit and debit entries are made.

*Impacted by:* [C16 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C14 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**Account <Acct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount41](#)" on page 55 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		56
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		56
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	56
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		57
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		57
	Owner <Ownr>	[0..1]	±		57
	Servicer <Svcr>	[0..1]	±		57

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or proxy must be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
And      /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 2.4.2.11 RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the parent account of the account for which the report has been issued.

*Impacted by:* [C17 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C15 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 58 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		58
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		59
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	59
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		59
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		59

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
    /Identification Must be present
And    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 2.4.2.12 Interest <Intrst>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides general interest information that applies to the account at a particular moment in time.

**Interest <Intrst>** contains the following elements (see "AccountInterest4" on page 207 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			208
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		208
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		209
	Rate <Rate>	[0..*]			209
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		209
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			210
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			210
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			211
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		212
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		212
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		212
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		212
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	212
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		213
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		213
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			213
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		213
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		213
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	213

#### 2.4.2.13 Balance <Bal>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to define the balance as a numerical representation of the net increases and decreases in an account at a specific point in time.

*Impacted by:* C12 "ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule"

**Balance <Bal>** contains the following elements (see "CashBalance8" on page 81 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		82
	CreditLine <CdtLine>	[0..*]	±		82
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	83
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		83
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		84

#### Constraints

- **ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule**

If Type is equal to ForwardAvailable, Availability is not allowed.

#### 2.4.2.14 TransactionsSummary <TxSummary>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides summary information on entries.

**TransactionsSummary <TxSummary>** contains the following elements (see "TotalTransactions6" on page 227 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalEntries <TtlNtries>	[0..1]			227
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		228
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		228
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		228
	TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		228
	TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		228
	TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>	[0..*]			229
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		229
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		229
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		229
	CreditEntries <CdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		230
	DebitEntries <DbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		230
	ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		230
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	230
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		231
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		231

#### 2.4.2.15 Entry <Ntry>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies an entry in the report.

*Usage:* At least one reference must be provided to identify the entry and its underlying transaction(s).

*Usage Rule:* In case of a Payments R-transaction the creditor / debtor referenced of the original payment initiation messages is also used for reporting of the R-transaction. The original debtor/creditor in the reporting of R-Transactions is not inverted.

Following elements all defined in the TransactionDetails in RelatedParties or RelatedAgents are impacted by this usage rule:

Creditor, UltimateCreditor, CreditorAccount, CreditorAgent, Debtor, UltimateDebtor, DebtorAccount and DebtorAgent.

*Impacted by:* C22 "ReferenceGuideline"

**Entry <Ntry>** contains the following elements (see "ReportEntry11" on page 132 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EntryReference <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		133
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	134
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		134
	ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		134
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	±		134
	BookingDate <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		135
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		135
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		135
	Availability <Avlbt>	[0..*]	±		136
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	136
	CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrlInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		137
	AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd>	[0..1]			137
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		137
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		137
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		137
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		139
	TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanId>	[0..1]			139
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		140
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		140
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		140
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		141
	EntryDetails <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		143
	AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		143

#### Constraints

- **ReferenceGuideline**

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

#### 2.4.2.16 AdditionalReportInformation <AddtlRptInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details of the account report.

*Datatype:* "Max500Text" on page 336



## 2.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C25 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		242
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		242

### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 3 **DRAFT1camt.053.001.09** **BankToCustomerStatementV09**

### 3.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

#### Scope

The BankToCustomerStatement message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It is used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of the entries booked to the account, and to provide the owner with balance information on the account at a given point in time.

#### Usage

The BankToCustomerStatement message can contain reports for more than one account. It provides information for cash management and/or reconciliation.

It contains information on booked entries only.

It can include underlying details of transactions that have been included in the entry.

The message is exchanged as defined between the account servicer and the account owner. It provides information on items that have been booked to the account and also balance information. Depending on services and schedule agreed between banks and their customers, statements may be generated and exchanged accordingly, for example for intraday or prior day periods.

It is possible that the receiver of the message is not the account owner, but a party entitled through arrangement with the account owner to receive the account information (also known as recipient).

#### Outline

The BankToCustomerStatementV09 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Common information for the message.

B. Statement

Reports on booked entries and balances for a cash account.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 3.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <BkToCstmrStmt>	[1..1]		C20, C24	
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]	±		21
	<b>Statement</b> <Stmt>	[1..*]			22
	<b>Identification</b> <Id>	[1..1]	Text		23
	<b>StatementPagination</b> <StmtPgntn>	[0..1]	±		23
	<b>ElectronicSequenceNumber</b> <ElctrncSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		23
	<b>ReportingSequence</b> <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		23
	<b>LegalSequenceNumber</b> <LglSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		24
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		24
	<b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		24
	<b>CopyDuplicateIndicator</b> <CpyDplctInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		24
	<b>ReportingSource</b> <RptgSrc>	[0..1]	±		25
	<b>Account</b> <Acct>	[1..1]	±	C16, C14	25
	<b>RelatedAccount</b> <RltdAcct>	[0..1]	±	C17, C15	25
	<b>Interest</b> <Intrst>	[0..*]	±		26
	<b>Balance</b> <Bal>	[1..*]	±	C12	27
	<b>TransactionsSummary</b> <TxSummary>	[0..1]	±		28
	<b>Entry</b> <Ntry>	[0..*]	±	C22	29
	<b>AdditionalStatementInformation</b> <AddtlStmtInf>	[0..1]	Text		30
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C25	31

## 3.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**C3 AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C4 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C5 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C6 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C7 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C8 DescriptionPresenceRule**

If Description is not present then either ISIN or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

**C9 DescriptionUsageRule**

Description must be used alone as the last resort.

**C10 DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

**C11 FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

**C12 ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule**

If Type is equal to ForwardAvailable, Availability is not allowed.

**C13 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C14 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C15 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C16 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or proxy must be present.

**C17 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C18 ISINGuideline**

When an ISIN code exists, it is strongly recommended that the ISIN be used.

**C19 ISINPresenceRule**

If ISIN is not present then either Description or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

**C20 MessageOrStatementPaginationRule**

MessagePagination may be present or StatementPagination may be present, but not both.

Following Must be True

```
/GroupHeader/MessagePagination Must be absent
Or    /Statement[*]/StatementPagination Must be absent
```

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C21 OtherIdentificationPresenceRule**

If OtherIdentification is not present then either ISIN or Description must be present.

**C22 ReferenceGuideline**

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

**C23 ReturnReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

**C24 SupplementaryDataRule**

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C25 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 3.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 3.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Common information for the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following elements (see "GroupHeader81" on page 232 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		232
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		232
	MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>	[0..1]	±		232
	MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>	[0..1]	±		233
	OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>	[0..1]	±		233
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		233

### 3.4.2 Statement <Stmnt>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Reports on booked entries and balances for a cash account.

**Statement <Stmnt>** contains the following **AccountStatement10** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		23
	StatementPagination <StmntPgntn>	[0..1]	±		23
	ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrcSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		23
	ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		23
	LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		24
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		24
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		24
	CopyDuplicateIndicator <CpyDplctInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		24
	ReportingSource <RptgSrc>	[0..1]	±		25
	Account <Acct>	[1..1]	±	C16, C14	25
	RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>	[0..1]	±	C17, C15	25
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..*]	±		26
	Balance <Bal>	[1..*]	±	C12	27
	TransactionsSummary <Txsumry>	[0..1]	±		28
	Entry <Ntry>	[0..*]	±	C22	29
	AdditionalStatementInformation <AddtlStmntInf>	[0..1]	Text		30

### 3.4.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the account servicer, to unambiguously identify the account statement.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

### 3.4.2.2 StatementPagination <StmtPgntn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the page number of the statement.

Usage: The pagination of the statement is only allowed when agreed between the parties.

**StatementPagination <StmtPgntn>** contains the following elements (see "Pagination1" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PageNumber <PgNb>	[1..1]	Text		235
	LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		235

### 3.4.2.3 ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrncSeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the statement, as assigned by the account servicer.

Usage: The sequential number is increased incrementally for each statement sent electronically.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 332

### 3.4.2.4 ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the range of identification sequence numbers, as provided in the request.

**ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>** contains one of the following elements (see "SequenceRange1Choice" on page 214 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	FromToSequence <FrToSeq>	[1..*]			215
	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	EqualSequence <EQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		216
Or}	NotEqualSequence <NEQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		216

### 3.4.2.5 LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal sequential number of the statement, as assigned by the account servicer. It is increased incrementally for each statement sent.

*Usage:* Where a paper statement is a legal requirement, it may have a number different from the electronic sequential number. Paper statements could for instance only be sent if movement on the account has taken place, whereas electronic statements could be sent at the end of each reporting period, regardless of whether movements have taken place or not.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 332

### 3.4.2.6 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the statement was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 329

### 3.4.2.7 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the account statement is issued.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "DateTimePeriod1" on page 190 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		190
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		191

### 3.4.2.8 CopyDuplicateIndicator <CpyDplctInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 312

CodeName	Name	Definition
CODU	CopyDuplicate	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent.
COPY	Copy	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.
DUPL	Duplicate	Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.



### 3.4.2.9 ReportingSource <RptgSrc>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the application used to generate the reporting.

**ReportingSource <RptgSrc>** contains one of the following elements (see "[ReportingSource1Choice](#)" on page 214 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		214
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		214

### 3.4.2.10 Account <Acct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account to which credit and debit entries are made.

*Impacted by:* [C16 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C14 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**Account <Acct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount41](#)" on page 55 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		56
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		56
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	56
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		57
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		57
	Owner <Ownr>	[0..1]	±		57
	Servicer <Svcr>	[0..1]	±		57

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or proxy must be present.

Following Must be True  
/Identification Must be present  
And /Proxy Must be present

### 3.4.2.11 RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the parent account of the account for which the statement has been issued.

*Impacted by: C17 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C15 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"*

**RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 58 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		58
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		59
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	59
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		59
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		59

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
And      /Proxy Must be present
```

### 3.4.2.12 Interest <Intrst>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides general interest information that applies to the account at a particular moment in time.

**Interest <Intrst>** contains the following elements (see "AccountInterest4" on page 207 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			208
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		208
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		209
	Rate <Rate>	[0..*]			209
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		209
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			210
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			210
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			211
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		212
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		212
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		212
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		212
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	212
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		213
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		213
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			213
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		213
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		213
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	213

### 3.4.2.13 Balance <Bal>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to define the balance as a numerical representation of the net increases and decreases in an account at a specific point in time.

*Impacted by:* C12 "ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule"

**Balance <Bal>** contains the following elements (see "CashBalance8" on page 81 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		82
	CreditLine <CdtLine>	[0..*]	±		82
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	83
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		83
	Availability <Avlbty>	[0..*]	±		84

#### Constraints

- **ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule**

If Type is equal to ForwardAvailable, Availability is not allowed.

#### 3.4.2.14 TransactionsSummary <TxSummary>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides summary information on entries.

**TransactionsSummary <TxSummary>** contains the following elements (see "TotalTransactions6" on page 227 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalEntries <TtlNtries>	[0..1]			227
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		228
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		228
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		228
	TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		228
	TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		228
	TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>	[0..*]			229
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		229
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		229
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		229
	CreditEntries <CdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		230
	DebitEntries <DbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		230
	ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		230
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	230
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		231
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		231

### 3.4.2.15 Entry <Ntry>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specify an entry in the statement.

*Usage:* At least one reference must be provided to identify the entry and its underlying transaction(s).

*Usage Rule:* In case of a Payments R-transaction the creditor / debtor referenced of the original payment initiation messages is also used for reporting of the R-transaction. The original debtor/creditor in the reporting of R-Transactions is not inverted.

Following elements all defined in the TransactionDetails in RelatedParties or RelatedAgents are impacted by this usage rule:

Creditor, UltimateCreditor, CreditorAccount, CreditorAgent, Debtor, UltimateDebtor, DebtorAccount and DebtorAgent.

*Impacted by:* C22 "ReferenceGuideline"

**Entry <Ntry>** contains the following elements (see "ReportEntry11" on page 132 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EntryReference <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		133
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	134
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		134
	ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		134
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	±		134
	BookingDate <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		135
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		135
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		135
	Availability <Avlbt>	[0..*]	±		136
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	136
	CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrlInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		137
	AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd>	[0..1]			137
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		137
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		137
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		137
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		139
	TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanl>	[0..1]			139
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		140
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		140
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		140
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		141
	EntryDetails <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		143
	AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		143

#### Constraints

- **ReferenceGuideline**

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

#### 3.4.2.16 AdditionalStatementInformation <AddtlStmntInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details of the account statement.

*Datatype:* "Max500Text" on page 336

### 3.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C25 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		242
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		242

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 4 DRAFT1camt.054.001.09 BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotificationV09

## 4.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

### Scope

The BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It can be used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of single or multiple debit and/or credit entries reported to the account.

### Usage

The BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification message can contain reports for more than one account. It provides information for cash management and/or reconciliation.

The BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification message can be used to:

- report pending and booked items;
- notify one or more debit entries;
- notify one or more credit entries;
- notify a combination of debit and credit entries.

It can include underlying details of transactions that have been included in the entry.

It is possible that the receiver of the message is not the account owner, but a party entitled by the account owner to receive the account information (also known as recipient).

It does not contain balance information.

### Outline

The BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotificationV09 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

#### A. GroupHeader

Common information for the message.

#### B. Notification

Notifies debit and credit entries for the account.

#### C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.



## 4.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <BkToCstmrDbtCdtNtfctn>	[1..1]		C19, C23	
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]	±		35
	<b>Notification</b> <Ntfctn>	[1..*]			36
	<b>Identification</b> <Id>	[1..1]	Text		36
	<b>NotificationPagination</b> <NtfctnPgntr>	[0..1]	±		37
	<b>ElectronicSequenceNumber</b> <ElctrncSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		37
	<b>ReportingSequence</b> <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		37
	<b>LegalSequenceNumber</b> <LglSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		37
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		38
	<b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		38
	<b>CopyDuplicateIndicator</b> <CpyDplctInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		38
	<b>ReportingSource</b> <RptgSrc>	[0..1]	±		38
	<b>Account</b> <Acct>	[1..1]	±	C15, C13	39
	<b>RelatedAccount</b> <RltdAcct>	[0..1]	±	C16, C14	39
	<b>Interest</b> <Intrst>	[0..*]	±		40
	<b>TransactionsSummary</b> <TxSummary>	[0..1]	±		41
	<b>Entry</b> <Ntry>	[0..*]	±	C21	42
	<b>AdditionalNotificationInformation</b> <AddtlNtfctnInf>	[0..1]	Text		43
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C24	44

## 4.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**C3 AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C4 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C5 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C6 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C7 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C8 DescriptionPresenceRule**

If Description is not present then either ISIN or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

**C9 DescriptionUsageRule**

Description must be used alone as the last resort.

**C10 DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

**C11 FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

**C12 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C13 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C14 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C15 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or proxy must be present.

**C16 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C17 ISINGuideline**

When an ISIN code exists, it is strongly recommended that the ISIN be used.

**C18 ISINPresenceRule**

If ISIN is not present then either Description or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

**C19 MessageOrNotificationPaginationRule**

MessagePagination may be present or NotificationPagination may be present, but not both.

Following Must be True

/GroupHeader/MessagePagination Must be absent

Or /Notification[\*]/NotificationPagination Must be absent

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C20 OtherIdentificationPresenceRule**

If OtherIdentification is not present then either ISIN or Description must be present.

**C21 ReferenceGuideline**

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

**C22 ReturnReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

**C23 SupplementaryDataRule**

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C24 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 4.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 4.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Common information for the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following elements (see "GroupHeader81" on page 232 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		232
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		232
	MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>	[0..1]	±		232
	MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>	[0..1]	±		233
	OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>	[0..1]	±		233
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		233

## 4.4.2 Notification <Ntfctn>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Notifies debit and credit entries for the account.

**Notification <Ntfctn>** contains the following **AccountNotification19** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Identification</b> <Id>	[1..1]	Text		36
	<b>NotificationPagination</b> <NtfctnPgntn>	[0..1]	±		37
	<b>ElectronicSequenceNumber</b> <ElctrcSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		37
	<b>ReportingSequence</b> <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		37
	<b>LegalSequenceNumber</b> <LglSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		37
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		38
	<b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		38
	<b>CopyDuplicateIndicator</b> <CpyDplctInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		38
	<b>ReportingSource</b> <RptgSrc>	[0..1]	±		38
	<b>Account</b> <Acct>	[1..1]	±	C15, C13	39
	<b>RelatedAccount</b> <RltdAcct>	[0..1]	±	C16, C14	39
	<b>Interest</b> <Intrst>	[0..*]	±		40
	<b>TransactionsSummary</b> <TxSummary>	[0..1]	±		41
	<b>Entry</b> <Ntry>	[0..*]	±	C21	42
	<b>AdditionalNotificationInformation</b> <AddtlNtfctnInf>	[0..1]	Text		43

### 4.4.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the account servicer, to unambiguously identify the account notification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 4.4.2.2 NotificationPagination <NtfctnPgntn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the page number of the notification.

Usage: The pagination of the notification is only allowed when agreed between the parties.

**NotificationPagination <NtfctnPgntn>** contains the following elements (see "[Pagination1](#)" on [page 234](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PageNumber <PgNb>	[1..1]	Text		235
	LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		235

#### 4.4.2.3 ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrncSeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the notification, as assigned by the account servicer.

Usage: The sequential number is increased incrementally for each notification sent electronically.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 332

#### 4.4.2.4 ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the range of identification sequence numbers, as provided in the request.

**ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>** contains one of the following elements (see "[SequenceRange1Choice](#)" on [page 214](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	FromToSequence <FrToSeq>	[1..*]			215
	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	EqualSequence <EQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		216
Or}	NotEqualSequence <NEQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		216

#### 4.4.2.5 LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal sequential number of the notification, as assigned by the account servicer. It is increased incrementally for each notification sent.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 332

#### 4.4.2.6 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the notification was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 329

#### 4.4.2.7 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the account notification is issued.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "DateTimePeriod1" on page 190 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		190
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		191

#### 4.4.2.8 CopyDuplicateIndicator <CpyDplctInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 312

CodeName	Name	Definition
CODU	CopyDuplicate	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent.
COPY	Copy	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.
DUPL	Duplicate	Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.

#### 4.4.2.9 ReportingSource <RptgSrc>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the application used to generate the reporting.

**ReportingSource <RptgSrc>** contains one of the following elements (see "[ReportingSource1Choice](#)" on page 214 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		214
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		214

#### 4.4.2.10 Account <Acct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account to which credit and debit entries are made.

*Impacted by:* [C15 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C13 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**Account <Acct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount41](#)" on page 55 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		56
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		56
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	56
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		57
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		57
	Owner <Ownr>	[0..1]	±		57
	Servicer <Svcr>	[0..1]	±		57

#### Constraints

- IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or proxy must be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
And      /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 4.4.2.11 RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the parent account of the account for which the notification has been issued.

*Impacted by:* [C16 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C14 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 58 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		58
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		59
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	59
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		59
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		59

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
    /Identification Must be present
And    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 4.4.2.12 Interest <Intrst>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides general interest information that applies to the account at a particular moment in time.



**Interest <Intrst>** contains the following elements (see "AccountInterest4" on page 207 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			208
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		208
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		209
	Rate <Rate>	[0..*]			209
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		209
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			210
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			210
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			211
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		212
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		212
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		212
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		212
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	212
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		213
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		213
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			213
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		213
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		213
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	213

#### 4.4.2.13 TransactionsSummary <TxSummary>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides summary information on entries.

**TransactionsSummary <TxSummary>** contains the following elements (see "TotalTransactions6" on page 227 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalEntries <TtlNtries>	[0..1]			227
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		228
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		228
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		228
	TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		228
	TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		228
	TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>	[0..*]			229
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		229
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		229
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		229
	CreditEntries <CdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		230
	DebitEntries <DbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		230
	ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		230
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	230
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		231
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		231

#### 4.4.2.14 Entry <Ntry>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies an entry in the debit credit notification.

*Usage:* At least one reference must be provided to identify the entry and its underlying transaction(s).

*Usage Rule:* In case of a Payments R-transaction the creditor / debtor referenced of the original payment initiation messages is also used for reporting of the R-transaction. The original debtor/creditor in the reporting of R-Transactions is not inverted.

Following elements all defined in the TransactionDetails in RelatedParties or RelatedAgents are impacted by this usage rule:

Creditor, UltimateCreditor, CreditorAccount, CreditorAgent, Debtor, UltimateDebtor, DebtorAccount and DebtorAgent.

*Impacted by:* C21 "ReferenceGuideline"

**Entry <Ntry>** contains the following elements (see "ReportEntry11" on page 132 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EntryReference <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		133
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	134
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		134
	ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		134
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	±		134
	BookingDate <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		135
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		135
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		135
	Availability <Avlbty>	[0..*]	±		136
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	136
	CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrlInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		137
	AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd>	[0..1]			137
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		137
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		137
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		137
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		139
	TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanI>	[0..1]			139
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		140
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		140
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		140
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		141
	EntryDetails <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		143
	AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		143

#### Constraints

- **ReferenceGuideline**

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

#### 4.4.2.15 AdditionalNotificationInformation <AddtlNtfctnInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details of the account notification.

*Datatype:* "Max500Text" on page 336

### 4.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C24 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		242
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		242

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# **5        DRAFT1camt.060.001.06          AccountReportingRequestV06**

## **5.1      MessageDefinition Functionality**

### Scope

The AccountReportingRequest message is sent by the account owner, either directly or through a forwarding agent, to one of its account servicing institutions. It is used to ask the account servicing institution to send a report on the account owner's account in a BankToCustomerAccountReport (camt.052), a BankToCustomerStatement (camt.053) or a BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification (camt.054).

### Outline

The AccountReportingRequestV06 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Set of elements used to provide further details on the message.

B. ReportingRequest

Set of elements used to provide further details on the reporting request.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 5.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <AcctRptgReq>	[1..1]			
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]	±		47
	<b>ReportingRequest</b> <RptgReq>	[1..*]			48
	<b>Identification</b> <Id>	[0..1]	Text		48
	<b>RequestedMessageNameIdentification</b> <ReqdMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		48
	<b>Account</b> <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C8, C7	49
	<b>AccountOwner</b> <AcctOwnr>	[1..1]	±		49
	<b>AccountServicer</b> <AcctSvcr>	[0..1]	±		49
	<b>ReportingPeriod</b> <RptgPrd>	[0..1]			50
	<b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>	[1..1]	±		50
	<b>FromToTime</b> <FrToTm>	[0..1]	±		50
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		50
	<b>ReportingSequence</b> <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		51
	<b>RequestedTransactionType</b> <ReqdTxDp>	[0..1]			51
	<b>Status</b> <Sts>	[1..1]	±		51
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		52
	<b>FloorLimit</b> <FlrLmt>	[0..*]			52
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	52
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		53
	<b>RequestedBalanceType</b> <ReqdBalTp>	[0..*]	±		53
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C9	53

## 5.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C3 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C4 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C5 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C6 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C7 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C8 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C9 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 5.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 5.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide further details on the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following elements (see "GroupHeader77" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		234
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234
	MessageSender <MsgSndr>	[0..1]	±		234

## 5.4.2 ReportingRequest <RptgReq>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide further details on the reporting request.

**ReportingRequest <RptgReq>** contains the following **ReportingRequest6** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Identification</b> <Id>	[0..1]	Text		48
	<b>RequestedMessageNameIdentification</b> <ReqdMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		48
	<b>Account</b> <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C8, C7	49
	<b>AccountOwner</b> <AcctOwnr>	[1..1]	±		49
	<b>AccountServicer</b> <AcctSvcr>	[0..1]	±		49
	<b>ReportingPeriod</b> <RptgPrd>	[0..1]			50
	<b>FromDate</b> <FrToDt>	[1..1]	±		50
	<b>FromToTime</b> <FrToTm>	[0..1]	±		50
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		50
	<b>ReportingSequence</b> <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		51
	<b>RequestedTransactionType</b> <ReqdTxxTp>	[0..1]			51
	<b>Status</b> <Sts>	[1..1]	±		51
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		52
	<b>FloorLimit</b> <FlrLmt>	[0..*]			52
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	52
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		53
	<b>RequestedBalanceType</b> <ReqdBalTp>	[0..*]	±		53

### 5.4.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the account owner, to unambiguously identify the account reporting request.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

### 5.4.2.2 RequestedMessageNameIdentification <ReqdMsgNmId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the requested reporting message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335



### 5.4.2.3 Account <Acct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account to which the reporting request refers.

*Impacted by:* C8 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C7 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**Account <Acct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 58 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		58
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		59
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	59
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		59
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		59

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True

    /Identification Must be present

And      /Proxy Must be present

### 5.4.2.4 AccountOwner <AcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that legally owns the account.

**AccountOwner <AcctOwnr>** contains one of the following elements (see "Party40Choice" on page 248 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		249
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		249

### 5.4.2.5 AccountServicer <AcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**AccountServicer <AcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

#### 5.4.2.6 ReportingPeriod <RptgPrd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the requested reporting period.

**ReportingPeriod <RptgPrd>** contains the following **ReportingPeriod5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>FromDate</b> <FrToDt>	[1..1]	±		50
	<b>FromTime</b> <FrToTm>	[0..1]	±		50
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		50

##### 5.4.2.6.1 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a date range.

**FromDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "DatePeriod3" on page 189 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		189
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		190

##### 5.4.2.6.2 FromToTime <FrToTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a time range.

**FromToTime <FrToTm>** contains the following elements (see "TimePeriodDetails1" on page 191 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromTime <FrTm>	[1..1]	Time		191
	ToTime <ToTm>	[0..1]	Time		191

##### 5.4.2.6.3 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether all matching items need to be reported or only those items that are new or have changed since the last similar request was made.

Datatype: "QueryType3Code" on page 325

CodeName	Name	Definition
ALLL	All	Specifies that the query requests that all matching items be returned.
CHNG	Changed	Specifies that the query requests that only new matching items since the last similar query be returned.
MODF	Modified	Specifies that the query requests that only items that have changed since the last query be returned.

#### 5.4.2.7 ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the range of identification sequence numbers which are being requested.

**ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>** contains one of the following elements (see "SequenceRange1Choice" on page 214 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	FromToSequence <FrToSeq>	[1..*]			215
	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	EqualSequence <EQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		216
Or}	NotEqualSequence <NEQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		216

#### 5.4.2.8 RequestedTransactionType <ReqdTxDp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the transactions to be reported.

**RequestedTransactionType <ReqdTxDp>** contains the following **TransactionType2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Status &lt;Sts&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		51
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		52
	<b>FloorLimit &lt;FlrLmt&gt;</b>	[0..*]			52
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	52
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		53

##### 5.4.2.8.1 Status <Sts>

Presence: [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the status on the books of the account servicer of the transactions to be reported.

**Status <Sts>** contains one of the following elements (see ["EntryStatus1Choice"](#) on page 291 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		291
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		291

#### 5.4.2.8.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the reporting request refers to credit or debit entries.

*Datatype:* ["CreditDebitCode"](#) on page 313

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 5.4.2.8.3 FloorLimit <FlrLmt>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the minimum value of entries to be reported in the requested message.

**FloorLimit <FlrLmt>** contains the following **Limit2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	52
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		53

##### 5.4.2.8.3.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Minimum transaction amount to be reported in the requested message.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C5 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 307

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**5.4.2.8.3.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Indicates whether the floor limit applies to credit, to debit or to both credit and debit entries.*Datatype:* "FloorLimitType1Code" on page 321

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRED	Credit	Floor limit applies to credit entries.
DEBT	Debit	Floor limit applies to debit entries.
BOTH	Both	Floor limit applies to both credit and debit entries.

**5.4.2.9 RequestedBalanceType <ReqdBalTp>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Provides details on the requested balance reporting.**RequestedBalanceType <ReqdBalTp>** contains the following elements (see "BalanceType13" on page 80 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			81
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		81
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		81
	SubType <SubTp>	[0..1]			81
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		81
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		81

**5.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.*Impacted by:* C9 "SupplementaryDataRule"**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		242
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		242

**Constraints**

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 6 Message Items Types

### 6.1 MessageComponents

#### 6.1.1 Account

##### 6.1.1.1 CashAccountType2Choice

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		55
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		55

##### 6.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Account type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalCashAccountType1Code" on page 316](#)

##### 6.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 335](#)

##### 6.1.1.2 CashAccount41

*Definition:* Provides the details to identify an account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		56
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		56
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	56
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		57
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		57
	Owner <Ownr>	[0..1]	±		57
	Servicer <Svcr>	[0..1]	±		57

**Constraints**

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or proxy must be present.

Following Must be True  
     /Identification Must be present  
 And     /Proxy Must be present

**6.1.1.2.1 Identification <Id>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

**Identification <Id>** contains one of the following elements (see "[AccountIdentification4Choice](#)" on page 62 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C13	63
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		63

**6.1.1.2.2 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use of the account.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "[CashAccountType2Choice](#)" on page 55 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		55
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		55

**6.1.1.2.3 Currency <Ccy>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the currency in which the account is held.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode](#)" on page 308

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)



contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.1.2.4 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the account, as assigned by the account servicing institution, in agreement with the account owner in order to provide an additional means of identification of the account.

*Usage:* The account name is different from the account owner name. The account name is used in certain user communities to provide a means of identifying the account, in addition to the account owner's identity and the account number.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 336

#### 6.1.1.2.5 Proxy <Prxy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies an alternate assumed name for the identification of the account.

**Proxy <Prxy>** contains the following elements (see "ProxyAccountIdentification1" on page 61 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			61
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		61
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		61
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		61

#### 6.1.1.2.6 Owner <Ownr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that legally owns the account.

**Owner <Ownr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 245 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		245
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		246
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	246
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		247

#### 6.1.1.2.7 Servicer <Svcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

**Definition:** Party that manages the account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**Servicer <Svcr>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

### 6.1.1.3 CashAccount40

**Definition:** Provides the details to identify an account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		58
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		59
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	59
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		59
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		59

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
And    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 6.1.1.3.1 Identification <Id>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Unique and unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

**Identification <Id>** contains one of the following elements (see "[AccountIdentification4Choice](#)" on page 62 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C13	63
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		63

### 6.1.1.3.2 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use of the account.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "[CashAccountType2Choice](#)" on page 55 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		55
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		55

### 6.1.1.3.3 Currency <Ccy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the currency in which the account is held.

Usage: Currency should only be used in case one and the same account number covers several currencies

and the initiating party needs to identify which currency needs to be used for settlement on the account.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode"](#) on page 308

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### 6.1.1.3.4 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the account, as assigned by the account servicing institution, in agreement with the account owner in order to provide an additional means of identification of the account.

Usage: The account name is different from the account owner name. The account name is used in certain user communities to provide a means of identifying the account, in addition to the account owner's identity and the account number.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text"](#) on page 336

### 6.1.1.3.5 Proxy <Prxy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies an alternate assumed name for the identification of the account.

**Proxy <Prxy>** contains the following elements (see "[ProxyAccountIdentification1](#)" on page 61 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			61
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		61
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		61
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		61

#### 6.1.1.4 GenericAccountIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to a generic account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		60
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			60
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		60
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		61
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		61

##### 6.1.1.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by an institution.

*Datatype:* "[Max34Text](#)" on page 335

##### 6.1.1.4.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **AccountSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		60
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		61

##### 6.1.1.4.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalAccountIdentification1Code](#)" on page 314

**6.1.1.4.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.1.4.3 Issuer <Issr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.1.5 ProxyAccountIdentification1***Definition:* Information related to a proxy identification of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			61
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		61
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		61
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		61

**6.1.1.5.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Type of the proxy identification.**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **ProxyAccountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		61
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		61

**6.1.1.5.1.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.*Datatype:* "ExternalProxyAccountType1Code" on page 320**6.1.1.5.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.1.5.2 Identification <Id>***Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification used to indicate the account identification under another specified name.

*Datatype:* "Max2048Text" on page 335

### 6.1.1.6 SecuritiesAccount19

*Definition:* Account to or from which a securities entry is made.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		62
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		62
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		62

#### 6.1.1.6.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.1.6.2 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of securities account.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 204 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Issuer <Issr>	[1..1]	Text		204
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		204

#### 6.1.1.6.3 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Description of the account.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 336

## 6.1.2 Account Identification

### 6.1.2.1 AccountIdentification4Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the unique identification of an account as assigned by the account servicer.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C13	63
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		63

### 6.1.2.1.1 IBAN <IBAN>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* International Bank Account Number (IBAN) - identifier used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer. Further specifications of the format and content of the IBAN can be found in the standard ISO 13616 "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" version 1997-10-01, or later revisions.

*Impacted by:* C13 "IBAN"

*Datatype:* "IBAN2007Identifier" on page 330

#### Constraints

- **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

### 6.1.2.1.2 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an account, as assigned by the account servicer, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericAccountIdentification1](#)" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		60
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			60
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		60
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		61
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		61

## 6.1.3 Amount

### 6.1.3.1 AmountAndCurrencyExchange3

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the original amount.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[0..1]			65
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	66
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			66
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	66
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	67
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	67
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		67
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		67
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		68
	TransactionAmount <TxAmt>	[0..1]			68
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	68
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			68
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	69
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	69
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	69
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		70
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		70
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		70
	CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>	[0..1]			70
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	71
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			71
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	72
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	72
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	72
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		73
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		73
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		73
	AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnnncdPstngAmt>	[0..1]			73
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	74
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			74
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	75



Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	75
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	75
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		76
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		76
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		76
	ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>	[0..*]			76
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		77
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	77
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			77
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	78
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	78
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	78
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		79
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		79
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		79

#### 6.1.3.1.1 InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party and provides currency exchange information in case the instructed amount and/or currency is/are different from the entry amount and/or currency.

**InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>** contains the following **AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	66
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			66
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	66
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	67
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	67
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		67
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		67
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		68

**6.1.3.1.1.1 Amount <Amt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.3.1.1.2 CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.**CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>** contains the following **CurrencyExchange5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	66
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	67
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	67
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		67
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		67
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		68

**6.1.3.1.1.2.1 SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Currency from which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.1.2.2 TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency into which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.1.2.3 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.1.2.4 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

Usage: ExchangeRate expresses the ratio between UnitCurrency and QuotedCurrency (ExchangeRate = UnitCurrency/QuotedCurrency).

*Datatype:* "BaseOneRate" on page 332

#### 6.1.3.1.1.2.5 ContractIdentification <CtrctId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification to unambiguously identify the foreign exchange contract.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.3.1.1.2.6 QuotationDate <QtnDt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Date and time at which an exchange rate is quoted.*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 329**6.1.3.1.2 TransactionAmount <TxAmt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Amount of the underlying transaction.**TransactionAmount <TxAmt>** contains the following **AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	68
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			68
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	69
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	69
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	69
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		70
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		70
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		70

**6.1.3.1.2.1 Amount <Amt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.3.1.2.2 CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>***Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.

**CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>** contains the following **CurrencyExchange5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	69
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	69
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	69
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		70
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		70
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		70

#### 6.1.3.1.2.2.1 SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Currency from which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.2.2.2 TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency into which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.2.2.3 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308

#### **Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### **6.1.3.1.2.2.4 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

Usage: ExchangeRate expresses the ratio between UnitCurrency and QuotedCurrency (ExchangeRate = UnitCurrency/QuotedCurrency).

*Datatype:* "BaseOneRate" on page 332

#### **6.1.3.1.2.2.5 ContractIdentification <CtrctId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification to unambiguously identify the foreign exchange contract.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### **6.1.3.1.2.2.6 QuotationDate <QtnDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which an exchange rate is quoted.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 329

#### **6.1.3.1.3 CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide the countervalue amount and currency exchange information.

Usage: This can be either the counter amount quoted in an FX deal, or the result of the currency information applied to an instructed amount, before deduction of charges.

**CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>** contains the following **AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	71
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			71
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	72
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	72
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	72
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		73
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		73
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		73

#### 6.1.3.1.3.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.3.1.3.2 CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.

**CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>** contains the following **CurrencyExchange5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	72
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	72
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	72
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		73
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		73
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		73

#### 6.1.3.1.3.2.1 SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Currency from which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.3.2.2 TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency into which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.3.2.3 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308



**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**6.1.3.1.3.2.4 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

*Usage:* ExchangeRate expresses the ratio between UnitCurrency and QuotedCurrency (ExchangeRate = UnitCurrency/QuotedCurrency).

*Datatype:* "BaseOneRate" on page 332

**6.1.3.1.3.2.5 ContractIdentification <CtrctId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification to unambiguously identify the foreign exchange contract.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.3.1.3.2.6 QuotationDate <QtnDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which an exchange rate is quoted.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 329

**6.1.3.1.4 AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money, based on terms of corporate action event and balance of underlying securities, entitled to/from the account owner.

In some situations, this amount may alternatively be called entitled amount.

**AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>** contains the following **AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	74
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			74
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	75
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	75
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	75
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		76
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		76
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		76

#### 6.1.3.1.4.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.3.1.4.2 CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.

**CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>** contains the following **CurrencyExchange5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	75
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	75
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	75
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		76
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		76
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		76

#### 6.1.3.1.4.2.1 SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Currency from which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.4.2.2 TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency into which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.4.2.3 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**6.1.3.1.4.2.4 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

*Usage:* ExchangeRate expresses the ratio between UnitCurrency and QuotedCurrency (ExchangeRate = UnitCurrency/QuotedCurrency).

*Datatype:* "BaseOneRate" on page 332

**6.1.3.1.4.2.5 ContractIdentification <CtrctId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification to unambiguously identify the foreign exchange contract.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.3.1.4.2.6 QuotationDate <QtnDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which an exchange rate is quoted.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 329

**6.1.3.1.5 ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the original amount and currency exchange.

**ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>** contains the following **AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		77
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	77
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			77
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	78
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	78
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	78
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		79
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		79
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		79

#### 6.1.3.1.5.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of amount.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.3.1.5.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money to be exchanged against another amount of money in the counter currency.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.3.1.5.3 CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.

**CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>** contains the following **CurrencyExchange5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	78
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	78
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	78
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		79
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		79
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		79

#### 6.1.3.1.5.3.1 SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Currency from which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.5.3.2 TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency into which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.5.3.3 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**6.1.3.1.5.3.4 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

*Usage:* ExchangeRate expresses the ratio between UnitCurrency and QuotedCurrency (ExchangeRate = UnitCurrency/QuotedCurrency).

*Datatype:* "BaseOneRate" on page 332

**6.1.3.1.5.3.5 ContractIdentification <CtrctId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification to unambiguously identify the foreign exchange contract.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.3.1.5.3.6 QuotationDate <QtnDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which an exchange rate is quoted.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 329

**6.1.3.2 AmountAndDirection35**

*Definition:* Resulting debit or credit amount of the netted amounts for all debit and credit entries.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Quantity		79
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		79

**6.1.3.2.1 Amount <Amt>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Resulting amount of the netted amounts for all debit and credit entries.

*Datatype:* "NonNegativeDecimalNumber" on page 332

**6.1.3.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the amount is a credit or a debit amount.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 313

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

## 6.1.4 Amount Range

### 6.1.4.1 AmountRangeBoundary1

*Definition:* Limit for an amount range.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		80
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		80

#### 6.1.4.1.1 BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount value of the range limit.

*Datatype:* "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### 6.1.4.1.2 Included <Incl>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the boundary amount is included in the range of amount values.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "YesNoIndicator" on page 331):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

## 6.1.5 Balance

### 6.1.5.1 BalanceType13

*Definition:* Set of elements used to define the balance type and sub-type.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			81
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		81
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		81
	SubType <SubTp>	[0..1]			81
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		81
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		81



#### 6.1.5.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Coded or proprietary format balance type.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **BalanceType10Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		81
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		81

##### 6.1.5.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance type, in a coded format.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 315

##### 6.1.5.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance type, in a proprietary format.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.5.1.2 SubType <SubTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the balance sub-type.

**SubType <SubTp>** contains one of the following **BalanceSubType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		81
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		81

##### 6.1.5.1.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance sub-type, as published in an external balance sub-type code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceSubType1Code" on page 315

##### 6.1.5.1.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a proprietary code for the balance type.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.5.2 CashBalance8

*Definition:* Set of elements used to define the balance details.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		82
	CreditLine <CdtLine>	[0..*]	±		82
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	83
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		83
	Availability <Avlbty>	[0..*]	±		84

### Constraints

- **ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule**

If Type is equal to ForwardAvailable, Availability is not allowed.

#### 6.1.5.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the nature of a balance.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following elements (see "BalanceType13" on page 80 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			81
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		81
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		81
	SubType <SubTp>	[0..1]			81
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		81
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		81

#### 6.1.5.2.2 CreditLine <CdtLine>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the credit line.

**CreditLine <CdtLine>** contains the following elements (see "[CreditLine3](#)" on page 84 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		84
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			85
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		85
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		85
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	85
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		85

#### 6.1.5.2.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money of the cash balance.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 307

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.5.2.4 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the balance is a credit or a debit balance.

*Usage:* A zero balance is considered to be a credit balance.

*Datatype:* ["CreditDebitCode"](#) on page 313

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 6.1.5.2.5 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates the date (and time) of the balance.

**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following elements (see ["DateAndDateTime2Choice"](#) on page 190 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		190
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		190

#### 6.1.5.2.6 Availability <Avlbt>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to indicate when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

*Usage:* This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.

*Example:* When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).

**Availability <Avlbt>** contains the following elements (see ["CashAvailability1"](#) on page 131 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			131
{Or	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		132
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		132
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	132
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132

#### 6.1.5.3 CreditLine3

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details of the credit line.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		84
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			85
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		85
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		85
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	85
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		85

##### 6.1.5.3.1 Included <Incl>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether or not the credit line is included in the balance.

**Datatype:** One of the following values must be used (see ["TrueFalseIndicator"](#) on page 331):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.1.5.3.2 Type <Tp>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Type of the credit line provided when multiple credit lines may be provided.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CreditLineType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		85
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		85

##### 6.1.5.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

**Presence:** [1..1]

**Definition:** Type of the credit line, as published in an external purpose code list.

**Datatype:** ["ExternalCreditLineType1Code"](#) on page 317

##### 6.1.5.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

**Presence:** [1..1]

**Definition:** Type of the credit line, in a proprietary form.

**Datatype:** ["Max35Text"](#) on page 335

##### 6.1.5.3.3 Amount <Amt>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Amount of money of the credit line.

**Impacted by:** [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

**Datatype:** ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 307

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

##### 6.1.5.3.4 Date <Dt>

**Presence:** [0..1]

*Definition:* Date of the credit line provided when multiple credit lines may be provided.

**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 190 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		190
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		190

## 6.1.6 Bank Transaction Code

### 6.1.6.1 BankTransactionCodeStructure4

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the type or operations code of a transaction entry.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		86
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			87
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		87
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		87

#### Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True

/Domain Must be present

Or /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

#### 6.1.6.1.1 Domain <Domn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide the domain, the family and the sub-family of the bank transaction code, in a structured and hierarchical format.

*Usage:* If a specific family or sub-family code cannot be provided, the generic family code defined for the domain or the generic sub-family code defined for the family should be provided.

**Domain <Domn>** contains the following elements (see ["BankTransactionCodeStructure5"](#) on page 88 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		88
	Family <Fmly>	[1..1]	±		88

#### 6.1.6.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Bank transaction code in a proprietary form, as defined by the issuer.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryBankTransactionCodeStructure1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		87
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		87

##### 6.1.6.1.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary bank transaction code to identify the underlying transaction.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 335

##### 6.1.6.1.2.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the proprietary bank transaction code.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 335

#### 6.1.6.2 BankTransactionCodeStructure6

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the type or operations code of a transaction entry.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		87
	SubFamilyCode <SubFmlyCd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		87

##### 6.1.6.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the family within a domain.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalBankTransactionFamily1Code"](#) on page 315

##### 6.1.6.2.2 SubFamilyCode <SubFmlyCd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the sub-product family within a specific family.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalBankTransactionSubFamily1Code" on page 316](#)

### 6.1.6.3 BankTransactionCodeStructure5

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the type or operations code of a transaction entry.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		88
	Family <Fmly>	[1..1]	±		88

#### 6.1.6.3.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the business area of the underlying transaction.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalBankTransactionDomain1Code" on page 315](#)

#### 6.1.6.3.2 Family <Fmly>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the family and the sub-family of the bank transaction code, within a specific domain, in a structured and hierarchical format.

**Family <Fmly>** contains the following elements (see ["BankTransactionCodeStructure6" on page 87](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		87
	SubFamilyCode <SubFmlyCd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		87

## 6.1.7 Card Transaction

### 6.1.7.1 CardEntry5

*Definition:* Card transaction entry.



Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			90
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			91
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		92
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		92
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		92
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		92
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		92
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			93
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		93
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		93
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			93
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		93
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		94
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		94
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		94
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		94
	POI <POI>	[0..1]			94
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		95
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		96
	GroupIdentification <Grpld>	[0..1]	Text		96
	Capabilities <Cpblties>	[0..1]			96
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		96
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrhdldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		97
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		97
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			98
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		98
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		98
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		98
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			98
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		99
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		99
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		99
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		100
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		100
	AggregatedEntry <AggtdNtry>	[0..1]			100
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		101
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcnclnId>	[0..1]	Text		101
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			101
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		101
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		101
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]	±		102
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±	C17, C15	102

#### 6.1.7.1.1 Card <Card>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Electronic money product that provides the cardholder with a portable and specialised computer device, which typically contains a microprocessor.

**Card <Card>** contains the following **PaymentCard4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			91
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		92
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		92
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		92
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		92
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		92
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			93
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		93
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		93
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			93
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		93
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		94
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		94
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		94
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		94

#### 6.1.7.1.1.1 PlainCardData <PlainCardData>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sensitive data associated with the card performing the transaction.

**PlainCardData** <PlainCardData> contains the following **PlainCardData1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		92
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		92
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		92
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		92
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		92
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			93
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		93
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		93
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			93
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		93
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		94

#### 6.1.7.1.1.1.1 PAN <PAN>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Primary Account Number (PAN) of the card, or card number.

*Datatype:* "Min8Max28NumericText" on page 337

#### 6.1.7.1.1.1.2 CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identify a card inside a set of cards with the same card number (PAN).

*Datatype:* "Min2Max3NumericText" on page 336

#### 6.1.7.1.1.1.3 EffectiveDate <FctvDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date as from which the card can be used.

*Datatype:* "ISOYearMonth" on page 338

#### 6.1.7.1.1.1.4 ExpiryDate <XpryDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Expiry date of the card.

*Datatype:* "ISOYearMonth" on page 338

#### 6.1.7.1.1.1.5 ServiceCode <SvcCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Services attached to the card, as defined in ISO 7813.

*Datatype:* "Exact3NumericText" on page 333

**6.1.7.1.1.1.6 TrackData <TrckData>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Magnetic track or equivalent payment card data.**TrackData <TrckData>** contains the following **TrackData1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		93
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		93

**6.1.7.1.1.1.6.1 TrackNumber <TrckNb>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Track number of the card.*Datatype:* "Exact1NumericText" on page 333**6.1.7.1.1.1.6.2 TrackValue <TrckVal>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Card track content or equivalent.*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 334**6.1.7.1.1.1.7 CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Card security code (CSC) associated with the card performing the transaction.**CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>** contains the following **CardSecurityInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		93
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		94

**6.1.7.1.1.1.7.1 CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Card security code (CSC) management associated with the transaction.*Datatype:* "CSCManagement1Code" on page 313

CodeName	Name	Definition
PRST	CSCPresent	Card security code present.
BYPS	CSCByPass	Card security code by-passed or not provided by the merchant.
UNRD	CSCUnread	Card security code unreadable.
NCSC	NoCSC	No card security code imprint.

**6.1.7.1.1.1.7.2 CSCValue <CSCVal>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Card security code (CSC).*Datatype:* "Min3Max4NumericText" on page 337**6.1.7.1.1.2 CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Country code assigned to the card by the card issuer.*Datatype:* "Exact3NumericText" on page 333**6.1.7.1.1.3 CardBrand <CardBrnd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Brand name of the card.**CardBrand <CardBrnd>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification1" on page 203 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		203
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		203
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		204

**6.1.7.1.1.4 AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Additional card issuer specific data.*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 336**6.1.7.1.2 POI <POI>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Physical or logical card payment terminal containing software and hardware components.

**POI <POI>** contains the following **PointOfInteraction1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		95
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		96
	GroupIdentification <GrpId>	[0..1]	Text		96
	Capabilities <Cpblties>	[0..1]			96
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		96
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrhdldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		97
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		97
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			98
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		98
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		98
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		98
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			98
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		99
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		99
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		99
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		100
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvINb>	[0..*]	Text		100

#### 6.1.7.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the POI (Point Of Interaction) for the acquirer or its agent.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification32](#)" on page 205 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		205
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		205
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		206
	ShortName <ShrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		206

**6.1.7.1.2.2 SystemName <SysNm>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Common name assigned by the acquirer to the POI system.*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 336**6.1.7.1.2.3 GroupIdentification <GrpId>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identifier assigned by the merchant identifying a set of POI terminals performing some categories of transactions.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.7.1.2.4 Capabilities <Cpblties>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.**Capabilities <Cpblties>** contains the following **PointOfInteractionCapabilities1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		96
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		97
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		97
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			98
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		98
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		98
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		98

**6.1.7.1.2.4.1 CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Card reading capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.*Datatype:* "CardDataReading1Code" on page 310

CodeName	Name	Definition
TAGC	Tag	Tag reading capabilities (RFID, etc.).
PHYS	Physical	Keyboard entry or OCR reading of embossing or printed data, either at time of transaction or after the event.
BRCD	BarCode	Bar code.
MGST	MagneticStripe	Magnetic stripe.
CICC	ICC	ICC (Integrated Circuit Card) with contact containing software applications conform to ISO 7816.



CodeName	Name	Definition
DFLE	AccountData	Account data on file.
CTLS	ProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader.
ECTL	EMVProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader, with application conform to the standard EMV (standard initiated by Europay, Mastercard and Visa).

#### 6.1.7.1.2.4.2 CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrhdldrVrfctnCpblties>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Cardholder verification capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.

*Datatype:* "CardholderVerificationCapability1Code" on page 310

CodeName	Name	Definition
MNSG	ManualSignature	Manual signature verification.
NPIN	OnLinePIN	Online PIN (Personal Identification Number).
FCPN	OfflinePINCLEAR	Offline PIN in clear (Personal Identification Number).
FEPN	OfflinePINEncrypted	Offline PIN encrypted (Personal Identification Number).
FDSG	OfflineDigitalSignature	Offline digital signature analysis.
FBIO	OfflineBiometrics	Offline biometrics.
MNVR	ManualVerification	Other manual verification, for example passport or drivers license.
FBIG	OfflineBiographics	Offline biographics.
APKI	AccountDigitalSignature	Account based digital signature.
PKIS	PKISignature	PKI (Public Key Infrastructure) based digital signature.
CHDT	CardholderData	Cardholder authentication data.
SCEC	SecureElectronicCommerce	Three domain secure (three domain secure authentication of the cardholder).

#### 6.1.7.1.2.4.3 OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* On-line and off-line capabilities of the POI.

*Datatype:* "OnLineCapability1Code" on page 322

CodeName	Name	Definition
OFLN	OffLine	Off-line only capable.
ONLN	OnLine	On-line only capable.
SMON	SemiOffLine	Off-line capable with possible on-line requests to the acquirer.

**6.1.7.1.2.4.4 DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Capabilities of the display components performing the transaction.**DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>** contains the following **DisplayCapabilities1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		98
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		98

**6.1.7.1.2.4.4.1 DisplayType <DispTp>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Type of display (for example merchant or cardholder).*Datatype:* "UserInterface2Code" on page 328

CodeName	Name	Definition
MDSP	MerchantDisplay	Merchant display or interface.
CDSP	CardholderDisplay	Cardholder display or interface.

**6.1.7.1.2.4.4.2 NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Number of lines of the display component.*Datatype:* "Max3NumericText" on page 335**6.1.7.1.2.4.4.3 LineWidth <LineWidth>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Number of columns of the display component.*Datatype:* "Max3NumericText" on page 335**6.1.7.1.2.4.5 PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Number of columns of the printer component.*Datatype:* "Max3NumericText" on page 335**6.1.7.1.2.5 Component <Cmpnt>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Data related to a component of the POI performing the transaction.

**Component <Cmpnt>** contains the following **PointOfInteractionComponent1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		99
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		99
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		99
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		100
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		100

#### 6.1.7.1.2.5.1 POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of component belonging to a POI Terminal.

*Datatype:* "POIComponentType1Code" on page 323

CodeName	Name	Definition
SOFT	Soft	Payment or other software application.
EMVK	EMVKernel	EMV application kernel (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
EMVO	EMVLevel1	EMV physical interface (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
MRIT	MerchantInterface	Merchant interface.
CHIT	CardholderInterface	Cardholder Interface.
SECM	SecureModule	Security module.
PEDV	PINEntryDevice	Personal identification number (or PIN) entry device (PED).

#### 6.1.7.1.2.5.2 ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the software, hardware or system provider of the POI component.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.7.1.2.5.3 Model <Mdl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a model of POI component for a given manufacturer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.7.1.2.5.4 VersionNumber <VrsnNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Version of component belonging to a given model.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 334

#### 6.1.7.1.2.5.5 SerialNumber <SrINb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Serial number of a component.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.7.1.2.5.6 ApprovalNumber <ApprvINb>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Unique approval number for a component, delivered by a certification body.

Usage: More than one approval number could be present, when assigned by different bodies. The certification body identification must be provided within the approval number (for example at the beginning of the value).

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 336

#### 6.1.7.1.3 AggregatedEntry <AggtdNtry>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Card entry details, based on card transaction aggregated data performed by the account servicer.

**AggregatedEntry <AggtdNtry>** contains the following **CardAggregated2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		101
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		101
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			101
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		101
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		101
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]	±		102

#### 6.1.7.1.3.1 AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Service in addition to the main service.

*Datatype:* "CardPaymentServiceType2Code" on page 311

CodeName	Name	Definition
AGGR	Aggregation	Aggregation of low payments.
DCCV	DCC	Dynamic currency conversion (DCC).
GRTT	Gratuity	Card payment with gratuity.
INSP	Instalment	Instalment payment.

CodeName	Name	Definition
LOYT	Loyalty	Loyalty services.
NRES	NoShow	No show after reservation.
PUCO	PurchaseCorporate	Purchase and corporate data.
RECP	RecurringPayment	Recurring payment.
SOAF	SolicitedAvailableFunds	Solicited available funds.
UNAF	UnsolicitedAvailableFunds	Unsolicited available funds.
VCAU	VoiceAuthorisation	Voice authorisation.

#### 6.1.7.1.3.2 TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Category code conform to ISO 18245, related to the type of services or goods the merchant provides for the transaction.

*Datatype:* "ExternalCardTransactionCategory1Code" on page 316

#### 6.1.7.1.3.3 SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of the sales reconciliation period between the acceptor and the acquirer. This identification might be linked to the identification of the settlement for further verification by the merchant.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.7.1.3.4 SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of sequence numbers on which the globalisation applies.

**SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>** contains the following **CardSequenceNumberRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		101
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		101

##### 6.1.7.1.3.4.1 FirstTransaction <FrstTx>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* CardSequenceNumberRange1: FirstTransactionSequenceNumberMessage element to be finalised once feedback from Card SEG has been received.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

##### 6.1.7.1.3.4.2 LastTransaction <LastTx>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* CardSequenceNumberRange1: LastTransactionSequenceNumberMessage element to be finalised once feedback from Card SEG has been received.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.7.1.3.5 TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date range on which the globalisation applies.

**TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateOrDateTimePeriod1Choice" on page 191 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		191
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		192

#### 6.1.7.1.4 PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Prepaid account for the transfer or loading of an amount of money.

Impacted by: C17 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C15 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 58 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		58
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		59
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	59
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		59
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		59

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
And    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 6.1.7.2 CardTransaction18

Definition: Card transaction details.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			105
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			106
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		107
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		107
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		107
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		107
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		107
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			108
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		108
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		108
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			108
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		108
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		109
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		109
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		109
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		109
	POI <POI>	[0..1]			109
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		110
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		111
	GroupIdentification <Grpld>	[0..1]	Text		111
	Capabilities <Cpblties>	[0..1]			111
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		111
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrhdldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		112
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		112
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			113
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		113
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		113
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		113
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			113
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		114
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		114
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		114
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		115
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		115
	Transaction <Tx>	[0..1]			115
{Or	Aggregated <Aggtd>	[1..1]			117
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		117
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		118
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		118
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			118
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		118
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		118
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]	±		119
Or}	Individual <Indv>	[1..1]			119
	ICCRelatedData <ICCRltdData>	[0..1]	Text		121
	PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>	[0..1]			121
	CardPresent <CardPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		121
	CardholderPresent <CrhdldrPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		121
	OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>	[0..1]	Indicator		122
	AttendanceContext <AttdncCntxt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		122
	TransactionEnvironment <TxEnv>	[0..1]	CodeSet		122
	TransactionChannel <TxChan>	[0..1]	CodeSet		122
	AttendantMessageCapable <AttdntMsgCpbl>	[0..1]	Indicator		123
	AttendantLanguage <AttdntLang>	[0..1]	CodeSet		123
	CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
	FallbackIndicator <FlbckInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		123
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[0..1]			124
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		125



Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		125
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcnccltnId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	SaleReferenceNumber <SaleRefNb>	[0..1]	Text		126
	RePresentmentReason <RePresntmntRsn>	[0..1]	CodeSet		126
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		126
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	±		126
	Product <Pdct>	[0..1]			126
	ProductCode <PdctCd>	[1..1]	Text		127
	UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		127
	ProductQuantity <PdctQty>	[0..1]	Quantity		128
	UnitPrice <UnitPric>	[0..1]	Amount		128
	ProductAmount <PdctAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		128
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		129
	AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>	[0..1]	Text		129
	ValidationDate <VldtnDt>	[0..1]	Date		129
	ValidationSequenceNumber <VldtnSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		129
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±	C17, C15	129

#### 6.1.7.2.1 Card <Card>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Electronic money product that provides the cardholder with a portable and specialised computer device, which typically contains a microprocessor.

**Card <Card>** contains the following **PaymentCard4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			106
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		107
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		107
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		107
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		107
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		107
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			108
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		108
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		108
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			108
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		108
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		109
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		109
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		109
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		109

#### 6.1.7.2.1.1 PlainCardData <PlainCardData>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sensitive data associated with the card performing the transaction.

**PlainCardData** <PlainCardData> contains the following **PlainCardData1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		107
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		107
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		107
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		107
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		107
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			108
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		108
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		108
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			108
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		108
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		109

#### 6.1.7.2.1.1.1 PAN <PAN>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Primary Account Number (PAN) of the card, or card number.

*Datatype:* "Min8Max28NumericText" on page 337

#### 6.1.7.2.1.1.2 CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identify a card inside a set of cards with the same card number (PAN).

*Datatype:* "Min2Max3NumericText" on page 336

#### 6.1.7.2.1.1.3 EffectiveDate <FctvDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date as from which the card can be used.

*Datatype:* "ISOYearMonth" on page 338

#### 6.1.7.2.1.1.4 ExpiryDate <XpryDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Expiry date of the card.

*Datatype:* "ISOYearMonth" on page 338

#### 6.1.7.2.1.1.5 ServiceCode <SvcCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Services attached to the card, as defined in ISO 7813.

*Datatype:* "Exact3NumericText" on page 333

**6.1.7.2.1.1.6 TrackData <TrckData>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Magnetic track or equivalent payment card data.**TrackData <TrckData>** contains the following **TrackData1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		108
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		108

**6.1.7.2.1.1.6.1 TrackNumber <TrckNb>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Track number of the card.*Datatype:* "Exact1NumericText" on page 333**6.1.7.2.1.1.6.2 TrackValue <TrckVal>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Card track content or equivalent.*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 334**6.1.7.2.1.1.7 CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Card security code (CSC) associated with the card performing the transaction.**CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>** contains the following **CardSecurityInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		108
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		109

**6.1.7.2.1.1.7.1 CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Card security code (CSC) management associated with the transaction.*Datatype:* "CSCManagement1Code" on page 313

CodeName	Name	Definition
PRST	CSCPresent	Card security code present.
BYPS	CSCByPass	Card security code by-passed or not provided by the merchant.
UNRD	CSCUnread	Card security code unreadable.
NCSC	NoCSC	No card security code imprint.

**6.1.7.2.1.1.7.2 CSCValue <CSCVal>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Card security code (CSC).*Datatype:* "Min3Max4NumericText" on page 337**6.1.7.2.1.2 CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Country code assigned to the card by the card issuer.*Datatype:* "Exact3NumericText" on page 333**6.1.7.2.1.3 CardBrand <CardBrnd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Brand name of the card.**CardBrand <CardBrnd>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification1" on page 203 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		203
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		203
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		204

**6.1.7.2.1.4 AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Additional card issuer specific data.*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 336**6.1.7.2.2 POI <POI>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Physical or logical card payment terminal containing software and hardware components.

**POI <POI>** contains the following **PointOfInteraction1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		110
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		111
	GroupIdentification <GrpId>	[0..1]	Text		111
	Capabilities <Cpblties>	[0..1]			111
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		111
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrhdldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		112
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		112
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			113
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		113
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		113
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		113
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			113
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		114
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		114
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		114
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		115
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvINb>	[0..*]	Text		115

#### 6.1.7.2.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the POI (Point Of Interaction) for the acquirer or its agent.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification32](#)" on page 205 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		205
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		205
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		206
	ShortName <ShrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		206

**6.1.7.2.2.2 SystemName <SysNm>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Common name assigned by the acquirer to the POI system.*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 336**6.1.7.2.2.3 GroupIdentification <GrpId>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identifier assigned by the merchant identifying a set of POI terminals performing some categories of transactions.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.7.2.2.4 Capabilities <Cpblties>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.**Capabilities <Cpblties>** contains the following **PointOfInteractionCapabilities1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		111
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		112
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		112
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			113
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		113
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		113
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		113

**6.1.7.2.2.4.1 CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Card reading capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.*Datatype:* "CardDataReading1Code" on page 310

CodeName	Name	Definition
TAGC	Tag	Tag reading capabilities (RFID, etc.).
PHYS	Physical	Keyboard entry or OCR reading of embossing or printed data, either at time of transaction or after the event.
BRCD	BarCode	Bar code.
MGST	MagneticStripe	Magnetic stripe.
CICC	ICC	ICC (Integrated Circuit Card) with contact containing software applications conform to ISO 7816.

CodeName	Name	Definition
DFLE	AccountData	Account data on file.
CTLS	ProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader.
ECTL	EMVProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader, with application conform to the standard EMV (standard initiated by Europay, Mastercard and Visa).

#### 6.1.7.2.2.4.2 CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrhdldrVrfctnCpblties>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Cardholder verification capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.

*Datatype:* "CardholderVerificationCapability1Code" on page 310

CodeName	Name	Definition
MNSG	ManualSignature	Manual signature verification.
NPIN	OnLinePIN	Online PIN (Personal Identification Number).
FCPN	OfflinePINCLEAR	Offline PIN in clear (Personal Identification Number).
FEPN	OfflinePINEncrypted	Offline PIN encrypted (Personal Identification Number).
FDSG	OfflineDigitalSignature	Offline digital signature analysis.
FBIO	OfflineBiometrics	Offline biometrics.
MNVR	ManualVerification	Other manual verification, for example passport or drivers license.
FBIG	OfflineBiographics	Offline biographics.
APKI	AccountDigitalSignature	Account based digital signature.
PKIS	PKISignature	PKI (Public Key Infrastructure) based digital signature.
CHDT	CardholderData	Cardholder authentication data.
SCEC	SecureElectronicCommerce	Three domain secure (three domain secure authentication of the cardholder).

#### 6.1.7.2.2.4.3 OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* On-line and off-line capabilities of the POI.

*Datatype:* "OnLineCapability1Code" on page 322

CodeName	Name	Definition
OFLN	OffLine	Off-line only capable.
ONLN	OnLine	On-line only capable.
SMON	SemiOffLine	Off-line capable with possible on-line requests to the acquirer.



**6.1.7.2.2.4.4 DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Capabilities of the display components performing the transaction.**DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>** contains the following **DisplayCapabilities1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		113
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		113

**6.1.7.2.2.4.4.1 DisplayType <DispTp>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Type of display (for example merchant or cardholder).*Datatype:* "UserInterface2Code" on page 328

CodeName	Name	Definition
MDSP	MerchantDisplay	Merchant display or interface.
CDSP	CardholderDisplay	Cardholder display or interface.

**6.1.7.2.2.4.4.2 NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Number of lines of the display component.*Datatype:* "Max3NumericText" on page 335**6.1.7.2.2.4.4.3 LineWidth <LineWidth>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Number of columns of the display component.*Datatype:* "Max3NumericText" on page 335**6.1.7.2.2.4.5 PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Number of columns of the printer component.*Datatype:* "Max3NumericText" on page 335**6.1.7.2.2.5 Component <Cmpnt>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Data related to a component of the POI performing the transaction.

**Component <Cmpnt>** contains the following **PointOfInteractionComponent1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		114
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		114
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		114
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		115
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		115

#### 6.1.7.2.2.5.1 POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of component belonging to a POI Terminal.

*Datatype:* "POIComponentType1Code" on page 323

CodeName	Name	Definition
SOFT	Soft	Payment or other software application.
EMVK	EMVKernel	EMV application kernel (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
EMVO	EMVLevel1	EMV physical interface (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
MRIT	MerchantInterface	Merchant interface.
CHIT	CardholderInterface	Cardholder Interface.
SECM	SecureModule	Security module.
PEDV	PINEntryDevice	Personal identification number (or PIN) entry device (PED).

#### 6.1.7.2.2.5.2 ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the software, hardware or system provider of the POI component.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.7.2.2.5.3 Model <Mdl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a model of POI component for a given manufacturer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.7.2.2.5.4 VersionNumber <VrsnNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Version of component belonging to a given model.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 334

#### **6.1.7.2.2.5.5 SerialNumber <SrINb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Serial number of a component.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### **6.1.7.2.2.5.6 ApprovalNumber <ApprvINb>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Unique approval number for a component, delivered by a certification body.

*Usage:* More than one approval number could be present, when assigned by different bodies. The certification body identification must be provided within the approval number (for example at the beginning of the value).

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 336

#### **6.1.7.2.3 Transaction <Tx>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Card transaction details, which can be either globalised by the acquirer or individual transaction.

**Transaction <Tx>** contains one of the following **CardTransaction3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Aggregated <Aggtd>	[1..1]			117
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		117
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		118
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncld>	[0..1]	Text		118
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			118
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		118
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		118
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]	±		119
Or}	Individual <Indv>	[1..1]			119
	ICCRelatedData <ICCRltdData>	[0..1]	Text		121
	PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>	[0..1]			121
	CardPresent <CardPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		121
	CardholderPresent <CrhdldrPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		121
	OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>	[0..1]	Indicator		122
	AttendanceContext <AttdncCntxt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		122
	TransactionEnvironment <TxEnv>	[0..1]	CodeSet		122
	TransactionChannel <TxChan>	[0..1]	CodeSet		122
	AttendantMessageCapable <AttdntMsgCpbl>	[0..1]	Indicator		123
	AttendantLanguage <AttdntLang>	[0..1]	CodeSet		123
	CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
	FallbackIndicator <FlbckInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		123
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[0..1]			124
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		125
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		125
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncld>	[0..1]	Text		125
	SaleReferenceNumber <SaleRefNb>	[0..1]	Text		126
	RePresentmentReason <RePresntmntRsn>	[0..1]	CodeSet		126
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		126
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	±		126

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Product <Pdct>	[0..1]			126
	ProductCode <PdctCd>	[1..1]	Text		127
	UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		127
	ProductQuantity <PdctQty>	[0..1]	Quantity		128
	UnitPrice <UnitPric>	[0..1]	Amount		128
	ProductAmount <PdctAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		128
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		129
	AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>	[0..1]	Text		129
	ValidationDate <VldtnDt>	[0..1]	Date		129
	ValidationSequenceNumber <VldtnSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		129

#### 6.1.7.2.3.1 Aggregated <Aggtd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Card transaction details, based on card transaction aggregated data performed by the card acquirer.

**Aggregated <Aggtd>** contains the following **CardAggregated2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		117
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		118
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		118
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			118
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		118
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		118
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]	±		119

##### 6.1.7.2.3.1.1 AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Service in addition to the main service.

*Datatype:* "CardPaymentServiceType2Code" on page 311

CodeName	Name	Definition
AGGR	Aggregation	Aggregation of low payments.
DCCV	DCC	Dynamic currency conversion (DCC).
GRTT	Gratuity	Card payment with gratuity.
INSP	Instalment	Instalment payment.

CodeName	Name	Definition
LOYT	Loyalty	Loyalty services.
NRES	NoShow	No show after reservation.
PUCO	PurchaseCorporate	Purchase and corporate data.
RECP	RecurringPayment	Recurring payment.
SOAF	SolicitedAvailableFunds	Solicited available funds.
UNAF	UnsolicitedAvailableFunds	Unsolicited available funds.
VCAU	VoiceAuthorisation	Voice authorisation.

#### 6.1.7.2.3.1.2 TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Category code conform to ISO 18245, related to the type of services or goods the merchant provides for the transaction.

*Datatype:* "ExternalCardTransactionCategory1Code" on page 316

#### 6.1.7.2.3.1.3 SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of the sales reconciliation period between the acceptor and the acquirer. This identification might be linked to the identification of the settlement for further verification by the merchant.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.7.2.3.1.4 SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of sequence numbers on which the globalisation applies.

**SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>** contains the following **CardSequenceNumberRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		118
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		118

##### 6.1.7.2.3.1.4.1 FirstTransaction <FrstTx>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* CardSequenceNumberRange1: FirstTransactionSequenceNumberMessage element to be finalised once feedback from Card SEG has been received.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

##### 6.1.7.2.3.1.4.2 LastTransaction <LastTx>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* CardSequenceNumberRange1: LastTransactionSequenceNumberMessage element to be finalised once feedback from Card SEG has been received.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.7.2.3.1.5 TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date range on which the globalisation applies.

**TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateOrDateTimePeriod1Choice" on page 191 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		191
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		192

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2 Individual <Indv>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Card transaction details for the individual transaction, as recorded at the POI (point of interaction).

**Individual <Indv>** contains the following **CardIndividualTransaction2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ICCRRelatedData <ICCRltdData>	[0..1]	Text		121
	PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>	[0..1]			121
	CardPresent <CardPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		121
	CardholderPresent <CrhdldrPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		121
	OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>	[0..1]	Indicator		122
	AttendanceContext <AttdncCntxt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		122
	TransactionEnvironment <TxEnv<	[0..1]	CodeSet		122
	TransactionChannel <TxChanl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		122
	AttendantMessageCapable <AttdntMsgCpbl>	[0..1]	Indicator		123
	AttendantLanguage <AttdntLang>	[0..1]	CodeSet		123
	CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
	FallbackIndicator <FlfbckInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		123
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[0..1]			124
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		125
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		125
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	SaleReferenceNumber <SaleRefNb>	[0..1]	Text		126
	RePresentmentReason <RePresntmntRsn>	[0..1]	CodeSet		126
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		126
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	±		126
	Product <Pdct>	[0..1]			126
	ProductCode <PdctCd>	[1..1]	Text		127
	UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		127
	ProductQuantity <PdctQty>	[0..1]	Quantity		128
	UnitPrice <UnitPric>	[0..1]	Amount		128
	ProductAmount <PdctAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		128
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		129
	AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>	[0..1]	Text		129
	ValidationDate <VldtnDt>	[0..1]	Date		129



Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ValidationSequenceNumber <VldtnSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		129

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.1 ICCRelatedData <ICCRltdData>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Data related to an integrated circuit card application.

*Datatype:* "Max1025Text" on page 333

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2 PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Context of the card payment transaction.

**PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>** contains the following **PaymentContext3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CardPresent <CardPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		121
	CardholderPresent <CrdhldrPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		121
	OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>	[0..1]	Indicator		122
	AttendanceContext <AttndncCntxt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		122
	TransactionEnvironment <TxEnvnt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		122
	TransactionChannel <TxChanl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		122
	AttendantMessageCapable <AttndntMsgCpbl>	[0..1]	Indicator		123
	AttendantLanguage <AttndntLang>	[0..1]	CodeSet		123
	CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
	FallbackIndicator <FlbckInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		123
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[0..1]			124
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.1 CardPresent <CardPres>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the transaction has been initiated by a card physically present or not.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 331):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.2 CardholderPresent <CrdhldrPres>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the transaction has been initiated in presence of the cardholder or not.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see ["TrueFalseIndicator"](#) on page 331):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.3 OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* On-line or off-line context of the transaction.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see ["TrueFalseIndicator"](#) on page 331):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.4 AttendanceContext <AttndncCntxt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Human attendance at the POI location during the transaction.

*Datatype:* ["AttendanceContext1Code"](#) on page 309

CodeName	Name	Definition
ATTD	Attended	Attended payment, with an attendant.
SATT	SemiAttended	Semi-attended, including self checkout. An attendant supervises several payment, and could be called to help the cardholder.
UATT	Unattended	Unattended payment, no attendant present.

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.5 TransactionEnvironment <TxEnvnt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates the environment of the transaction.

*Datatype:* ["TransactionEnvironment1Code"](#) on page 327

CodeName	Name	Definition
MERC	Merchant	Merchant environment.
PRIV	Private	Private environment.
PUBL	Public	Public environment.

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.6 TransactionChannel <TxChanl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the type of the communication channels used by the cardholder to the acceptor system.

*Datatype:* ["TransactionChannel1Code"](#) on page 326

CodeName	Name	Definition
MAIL	MailOrder	Mail order.
TLPH	TelephoneOrder	Telephone order.
ECOM	ElectronicCommerce	Electronic commerce.
TVPY	TelevisionPayment	Payment on television.

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.7 AttendantMessageCapable <AttndntMsgCpbl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether a message can be sent or not on an attendant display (attendant display present or not).

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see ["TrueFalseIndicator"](#) on page 331):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.8 AttendantLanguage <AttndntLang>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Language used to display messages to the attendant.

*Datatype:* ["ISO2ALanguageCode"](#) on page 322

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.9 CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Entry mode of the card data.

*Datatype:* ["CardDataReading1Code"](#) on page 310

CodeName	Name	Definition
TAGC	Tag	Tag reading capabilities (RFID, etc.).
PHYS	Physical	Keyboard entry or OCR reading of embossing or printed data, either at time of transaction or after the event.
BRCD	BarCode	Bar code.
MGST	MagneticStripe	Magnetic stripe.
CICC	ICC	ICC (Integrated Circuit Card) with contact containing software applications conform to ISO 7816.
DFLE	AccountData	Account data on file.
CTLS	ProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader.
ECTL	EMVProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader, with application conform to the standard EMV (standard initiated by Europay, Mastercard and Visa).

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.10 FallbackIndicator <FllbckInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicator of a card entry mode fallback.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 331):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.11 AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Method used to authenticate a cardholder.

**AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>** contains the following **CardholderAuthentication2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.11.1 AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Method used to authenticate the cardholder.

*Datatype:* "AuthenticationMethod1Code" on page 309

CodeName	Name	Definition
UKNW	UnknownMethod	Authentication method is performed unknown.
BYPS	Bypass	Authentication bypassed by the merchant.
NPIN	OnLinePIN	On-line PIN authentication (Personal Identification Number).
FPIN	OfflinePIN	Off-line PIN authentication (Personal Identification Number).
CPSG	SignatureCapture	Electronic signature capture (handwritten signature).
PPSG	PaperSignature	Handwritten paper signature.
MANU	ManualVerification	Manual verification, for example passport or drivers license.
MERC	MerchantAuthentication	Merchant-related authentication.
SCRT	SecureCertificate	Electronic commerce transaction secured with the X.509 certificate of a customer.
SNCT	SecureNoCertificate	Secure electronic transaction without cardholder certificate.
SCNL	SecuredChannel	Channel-encrypted transaction.

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.11.2 AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Entity or object in charge of verifying the cardholder authenticity.

*Datatype:* "AuthenticationEntity1Code" on page 309

CodeName	Name	Definition
ICCD	ICC	Application in the chip card (Integrated Circuit Card), for instance an offline PIN verification.
AGNT	AuthorisedAgent	Authorisation agent of the issuer.
MERC	Merchant	Merchant (for example signature verification by the attendant).

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.3 AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Service in addition to the main service.

*Datatype:* "CardPaymentServiceType2Code" on page 311

CodeName	Name	Definition
AGGR	Aggregation	Aggregation of low payments.
DCCV	DCC	Dynamic currency conversion (DCC).
GRTT	Gratuity	Card payment with gratuity.
INSP	Instalment	Instalment payment.
LOYT	Loyalty	Loyalty services.
NRES	NoShow	No show after reservation.
PUCO	PurchaseCorporate	Purchase and corporate data.
RECP	RecurringPayment	Recurring payment.
SOAF	SolicitedAvailableFunds	Solicited available funds.
UNAF	UnsolicitedAvailableFunds	Unsolicited available funds.
VCAU	VoiceAuthorisation	Voice authorisation.

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.4 TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Category code conform to ISO 18245, related to the type of services or goods the merchant provides for the transaction.

This element is also known as the MerchantCategoryCode.

*Datatype:* "ExternalCardTransactionCategory1Code" on page 316

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.5 SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcnclntId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of the sales reconciliation period between the acceptor and the acquirer. This identification might be linked to the identification of the settlement for further verification by the merchant.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.7.2.3.2.6 SaleReferenceNumber <SaleRefNb>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unique reference of the sales as provided by the merchant.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.7.2.3.2.7 RePresentmentReason <RePresntmntRsn>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Reason for representment of a card transaction.*Datatype:* "ExternalRePresentmentReason1Code" on page 320**6.1.7.2.3.2.8 SequenceNumber <SeqNb>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Sequential number of the card transaction, as assigned by the POI (Point of Interaction).*Usage:* The sequential number is increased incrementally for each transaction.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.7.2.3.2.9 TransactionIdentification <TxId>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identification of the transaction assigned by the POI (Point Of Interaction).**TransactionIdentification <TxId>** contains the following elements (see "TransactionIdentifier1" on page 235 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		235
	TransactionReference <TxRef>	[1..1]	Text		235

**6.1.7.2.3.2.10 Product <Pdct>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Product purchased with the transaction.**Product <Pdct>** contains the following **Product2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ProductCode <PdctCd>	[1..1]	Text		127
	UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		127
	ProductQuantity <PdctQty>	[0..1]	Quantity		128
	UnitPrice <UnitPric>	[0..1]	Amount		128
	ProductAmount <PdctAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		128
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		129
	AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>	[0..1]	Text		129

**6.1.7.2.3.2.10.1 ProductCode <PdctCd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Product code of the item purchased.*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 336**6.1.7.2.3.2.10.2 UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unit of measure of the item purchased.*Datatype:* "UnitOfMeasure1Code" on page 327

CodeName	Name	Definition
PIEC	Piece	Standard length of cloth, wallpaper, as an item for sale or amount of a substance.
TONS	Ton	Measure of weight, in Britain 2240lb (long ton) and in the US 2000lb (short ton).
FOOT	Foot	Unit of length equal to 1/3 yard.
GBGA	GBGallon	Unit of volume that is equal to 8 pints.
USGA	USGallon	Unit of volume that is equal to 8 pints.
GRAM	Gram	Unit of measure that is equal to a 1,000th of a kilo.
INCH	Inch	Measure of length equal to 2.54 cm.
KILO	Kilogram	Basic unit of mass in the SI system, 1000 grams.
PUND	Pound	Unit of weight equal to 0.454 kilograms.
METR	Metre	Unit of length in the metric system, equal to 39.37 inches.
CMET	Centimetre	Unit of measure that is equal to one hundredth of a metre.
MMET	Millimetre	Unit of measure that is a thousandth of one metre.
LITR	Litre	Unit of volume that is equal to a thousand cubic centimetres.
CELI	Centilitre	Unit of volume that is equal to one hundredth of a litre.
MILI	MilliLitre	Unit of volume that is equal to one thousandth of a litre.
GBOU	GBOunce	Unit of weight equal to a sixteenth of a pound.
USOU	USOunce	Unit of weight equal to a sixteenth of a pound.
GBQA	GBQuart	Unit of volume that is equal to 2 pints.
USQA	USQuart	Unit of volume that is equal to 2 pints.

CodeName	Name	Definition
GBPI	GBPInt	Unit of volume that is equal to 568 cubic centimetres.
USPI	USPInt	Unit of volume that is equal to 473 cubic centimetres.
MILE	Mile	Unit of length equal to 1, 760 yards.
KMET	Kilometre	Unit of measure that is equal to 1, 000 meters.
YARD	Yard	Unit of length equal to 3 feet or 0.9144 metre.
SQKI	SquareKilometre	Measure of a surface, one kilometre by one kilometre.
HECT	Hectare	Unit of measure that is equal to 10, 000 square meters.
ARES	Are	Unit of measure equal to a 100 square meters.
SMET	SquareMetre	Measure of a surface, one metre by one metre.
SCMT	SquareCentimetre	Measure of a surface, one centimetre by one centimetre.
SMIL	SquareMillimetre	Measure of a surface, one millimetre by one millimetre.
SQMI	SquareMile	Measure of a surface, one mile by one mile.
SQYA	SquareYard	Measure of a surface, one yard by one yard.
SQFO	SquareFoot	Measure of a surface, one foot by one foot.
SQIN	SquareInch	Measure of a surface, one inch by one inch.
ACRE	Acre	Unit of measure equal to 4, 840 square yards.

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.10.3 ProductQuantity <PdctQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Product quantity.

*Datatype:* "DecimalNumber" on page 332

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.10.4 UnitPrice <UnitPric>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Price per unit of product.

*Datatype:* "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.10.5 ProductAmount <PdctAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]



*Definition:* Monetary value of purchased product.

*Datatype:* "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.10.6 TaxType <TaxTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information on tax paid on the product.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.10.7 AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Additional information related to the product.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.11 ValidationDate <VldtnDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date when the deposit was validated by the financial institution that collected the cash.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 329

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.12 ValidationSequenceNumber <VldtnSeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the validation of the cash deposit.

Usage: The sequential number is increased incrementally for each transaction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.7.2.4 PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Prepaid account for the transfer or loading of an amount of money.

*Impacted by:* C17 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C15 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 58 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		58
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		59
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	59
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		59
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		59

**Constraints**

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
     /Identification Must be present  
 And      /Proxy Must be present

## 6.1.8 Cash

### 6.1.8.1 CashDeposit1

*Definition:* Deposit of an amount of money defined in cash notes and/or coins.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NoteDenomination <NoteDnmtn>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	130
	NumberOfNotes <NbOfNotes>	[1..1]	Text		130
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	131

#### 6.1.8.1.1 NoteDenomination <NoteDnmtn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the note or coin denomination, including the currency, such as a 50 euro note.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 306

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.8.1.2 NumberOfNotes <NbOfNotes>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the number of notes of the same denomination in the deposit.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 334

### 6.1.8.1.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the total amount of money in the cash deposit, that is the note denomination times the number of notes.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 306

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

## 6.1.9 Cash Entry

### 6.1.9.1 CashAvailability1

*Definition:* Indicates when the amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and start generating interest.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			131
{Or	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		132
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		132
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	132
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132

#### 6.1.9.1.1 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates when the amount of money will become available.

**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following **CashAvailabilityDate1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		132
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		132

**6.1.9.1.1.1 NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Indicates the number of float days attached to the balance.*Datatype:* "Max15PlusSignedNumericText" on page 334**6.1.9.1.1.2 ActualDate <ActIDt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Identifies the actual availability date.*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 329**6.1.9.1.2 Amount <Amt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Identifies the available amount.*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.9.1.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Indicates whether the availability balance is a credit or a debit balance.*Usage:* A zero balance is considered to be a credit balance.*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 313

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

**6.1.9.2 ReportEntry11***Definition:* Provides further details on an entry in the report.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EntryReference <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		133
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	134
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		134
	ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		134
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	±		134
	BookingDate <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		135
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		135
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		135
	Availability <Avlbt>	[0..*]	±		136
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	136
	CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrlInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		137
	AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd>	[0..1]			137
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		137
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		137
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		137
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		139
	TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanl>	[0..1]			139
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		140
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		140
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		140
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		141
	EntryDetails <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		143
	AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		143

**Constraints**

- **ReferenceGuideline**

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

**6.1.9.2.1 EntryReference <NtryRef>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference for the entry.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.9.2.2 Amount <Amt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Amount of money in the cash entry.*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.9.2.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Indicates whether the entry is a credit or a debit entry.*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 313

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

**6.1.9.2.4 ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Indicates whether or not the entry is the result of a reversal.

Usage: This element should only be present if the entry is the result of a reversal.

If the CreditDebitIndicator is CRDT and ReversalIndicator is Yes, the original operation was a debit entry.

If the CreditDebitIndicator is DBIT and ReversalIndicator is Yes, the original operation was a credit entry.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 331):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

**6.1.9.2.5 Status <Sts>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Status of an entry on the books of the account servicer.

**Status <Sts>** contains one of the following elements (see ["EntryStatus1Choice"](#) on page 291 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		291
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		291

#### 6.1.9.2.6 BookingDate <BookgDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time when an entry is posted to an account on the account servicer's books.

Usage: Booking date is the expected booking date, unless the status is booked, in which case it is the actual booking date.

**BookingDate <BookgDt>** contains one of the following elements (see ["DateAndDateTime2Choice"](#) on page 190 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		190
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		190

#### 6.1.9.2.7 ValueDate <ValDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which assets become available to the account owner in case of a credit entry, or cease to be available to the account owner in case of a debit entry.

Usage: If entry status is pending and value date is present, then the value date refers to an expected/ requested value date.

For entries subject to availability/float and for which availability information is provided, the value date must not be used. In this case the availability component identifies the number of availability days.

**ValueDate <ValDt>** contains one of the following elements (see ["DateAndDateTime2Choice"](#) on page 190 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		190
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		190

#### 6.1.9.2.8 AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference as assigned by the account servicing institution to unambiguously identify the entry.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 335

### 6.1.9.2.9 Availability <Avlbt>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Indicates when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

*Usage:* This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.

*Example:* When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).

**Availability <Avlbt>** contains the following elements (see "CashAvailability1" on page 131 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			131
{Or	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		132
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		132
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	132
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132

### 6.1.9.2.10 BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to fully identify the type of underlying transaction resulting in an entry.

*Impacted by:* C10 "DomainOrProprietaryRule", C11 "FamilyAndSubFamilyRule"

**BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>** contains the following elements (see "BankTransactionCodeStructure4" on page 86 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		86
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			87
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		87
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		87

#### Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True

/Domain Must be present

Or /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.



**6.1.9.2.11 CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrInd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Indicates whether the transaction is exempt from commission.*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see ["YesNoIndicator"](#) on page 331):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

**6.1.9.2.12 AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInflnd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Indicates whether the underlying transaction details are provided through a separate message, as in the case of aggregate bookings.**AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInflnd>** contains the following **MessageIdentification2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		137
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		137

**6.1.9.2.12.1 MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the message name identifier of the message that will be used to provide additional details.*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 335**6.1.9.2.12.2 MessageIdentification <MsgId>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the identification of the message that will be used to provide additional details.*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 335**6.1.9.2.13 AmountDetails <AmtDtls>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Provides information on the original amount.

Usage: This component (on entry level) should be used when a total original batch or aggregate amount has to be provided. If required, the individual original amounts can be included in the same component on transaction details level.

**AmountDetails <AmtDtls>** contains the following elements (see "AmountAndCurrencyExchange3" on page 63 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[0..1]			65
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	66
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			66
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	66
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	67
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	67
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		67
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		67
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		68
	TransactionAmount <TxAmt>	[0..1]			68
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	68
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			68
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	69
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	69
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	69
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		70
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		70
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		70
	CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>	[0..1]			70
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	71
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			71
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	72
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	72
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	72
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		73
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		73
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		73
	AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>	[0..1]			73
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	74
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			74

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	75
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	75
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	75
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		76
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		76
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		76
	ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>	[0..*]			76
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		77
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	77
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			77
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	78
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	78
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	78
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		79
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		79
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		79

#### 6.1.9.2.14 Charges <Chrgs>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides information on the charges, pre-advised or included in the entry amount.

Usage: This component is used on entry level in case of batch or aggregate bookings.

**Charges <Chrgs>** contains the following elements (see "[Charges6](#)" on [page 184](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	184
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		184

#### 6.1.9.2.15 TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Channel used to technically input the instruction related to the entry.

**TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanI>** contains one of the following **TechnicalInputChannel1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		140
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		140

#### 6.1.9.2.15.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Technical input channel, as published in an external technical input channel code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalTechnicalInputChannel1Code" on page 321

#### 6.1.9.2.15.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Technical channel used to input the instruction, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.9.2.16 Interest <Intrst>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details of the interest amount included in the entry amount.

*Usage:* This component is used on entry level in the case of batch or aggregate bookings.

**Interest <Intrst>** contains the following elements (see "TransactionInterest4" on page 217 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalInterestAndTaxAmount <TtlIntrstAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	218
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			219
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	220
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		221
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			221
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		221
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		221
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]			222
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		222
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			222
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			223
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		223
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			224
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		225
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		225
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		225
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	225
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		225
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		226
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			226
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		226
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		226
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	226

#### 6.1.9.2.17 CardTransaction <CardTx>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details of the card transaction included in the entry amount, when globalised by the account servicer.

**CardTransaction <CardTx>** contains the following elements (see "CardEntry5" on page 88 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			90
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			91
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		92
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		92
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		92
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		92
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		92
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			93
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		93
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		93
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			93
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		93
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		94
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		94
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		94
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		94
	POI <POI>	[0..1]			94
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		95
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		96
	GroupIdentification <GrpId>	[0..1]	Text		96
	Capabilities <Cpblties>	[0..1]			96
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		96
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrhdldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		97
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		97
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			98
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		98
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		98
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		98
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			98

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		99
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		99
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		99
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		100
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		100
	AggregatedEntry <AggtdNtry>	[0..1]			100
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		101
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		101
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			101
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		101
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		101
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]	±		102
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±	C17, C15	102

#### 6.1.9.2.18 EntryDetails <NtryDtls>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides details on the entry.

**EntryDetails <NtryDtls>** contains the following elements (see "EntryDetails10" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Batch <Btch>	[0..1]			179
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		179
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfId>	[0..1]	Text		180
	NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTxs>	[0..1]	Text		180
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	180
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		180
	TransactionDetails <TxDtls>	[0..*]	±		180

#### 6.1.9.2.19 AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details of the entry.

*Datatype:* "Max500Text" on page 336

### **6.1.9.3 EntryTransaction11**

*Definition:* Identifies the underlying transaction.



Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	References <Refs>	[0..1]			148
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		148
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		148
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfId>	[0..1]	Text		149
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		149
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		149
	UETR <UETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		149
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	Text		149
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		150
	ChequeNumber <ChqNb>	[0..1]	Text		150
	ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>	[0..1]	Text		150
	AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		150
	AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		150
	MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfstrctrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		150
	ProcessingIdentification <PrcgId>	[0..1]	Text		150
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			150
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		151
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		151
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	151
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		151
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		152
	Availability <Avlby>	[0..*]	±		154
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[0..1]	±	C10, C11	155
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		155
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		155
	RelatedParties <RltdPtys>	[0..1]			156
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		157
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		157
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C17, C15	157

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		158
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		158
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C17, C15	159
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		159
	TradingParty <TradgPty>	[0..1]	±		160
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			160
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		160
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		160
	RelatedAgents <RltdAgts>	[0..1]			160
	InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		161
	InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		161
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		162
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		162
	IntermediaryAgent1 <IntrmyAgt1>	[0..1]	±		162
	IntermediaryAgent2 <IntrmyAgt2>	[0..1]	±		162
	IntermediaryAgent3 <IntrmyAgt3>	[0..1]	±		163
	ReceivingAgent <RcvgAgt>	[0..1]	±		163
	DeliveringAgent <DlvrAgt>	[0..1]	±		163
	IssuingAgent <IssgAgt>	[0..1]	±		164
	SettlementPlace <SttlmPlc>	[0..1]	±		164
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			164
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		164
	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		165
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			165
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		165
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		165
	Purpose <Purp>	[0..1]	±		165
	RelatedRemittanceInformation <RltdRmtInf>	[0..10]	±		166
	RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>	[0..1]	±		166
	RelatedDates <RltdDts>	[0..1]			166
	AcceptanceDateTime <AcceptncDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		167

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TradeActivityContractualSettlementDate <TradActvtyCtrctlSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		167
	TradeDate <TradDt>	[0..1]	Date		167
	InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		167
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		167
	EndDate <EndDt>	[0..1]	Date		168
	TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		168
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			168
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		168
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		168
	RelatedPrice <RltdPric>	[0..1]			168
{Or	DealPrice <DealPric>	[1..1]	±		169
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..*]			169
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		169
	Price <Pric>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	169
	RelatedQuantities <RltdQties>	[0..*]			170
{Or	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	±		170
Or	OriginalAndCurrentFaceAmount <OrgnlAndCurFaceAmt>	[1..1]	±		170
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]			171
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		171
	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	Text		171
	FinancialInstrumentIdentification <FinInstrmId>	[0..1]	±	C8, C9, C18, C19, C21	171
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]	±		172
	ReturnInformation <RtrInf>	[0..1]	±	C23	173
	CorporateAction <CorpActn>	[0..1]			174
	EventType <EvtTp>	[1..1]	Text		174
	EventIdentification <EvtId>	[1..1]	Text		174
	SafekeepingAccount <SfkpgAcct>	[0..1]	±		174
	CashDeposit <CshDpst>	[0..*]	±		174
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		175

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdditionalTransactionInformation <AddtlTxInf>	[0..1]	Text		178
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C25	178

#### 6.1.9.3.1 References <Refs>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the identification of the underlying transaction.

**References <Refs>** contains the following **TransactionReferences6** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		148
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		148
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfId>	[0..1]	Text		149
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		149
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		149
	UETR <UETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		149
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	Text		149
	MandatIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		150
	ChequeNumber <ChqNb>	[0..1]	Text		150
	ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>	[0..1]	Text		150
	AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		150
	AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		150
	MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		150
	ProcessingIdentification <PrctlId>	[0..1]	Text		150
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			150
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		151
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		151

##### 6.1.9.3.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party of the underlying message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

##### 6.1.9.3.1.2 AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference, as assigned by the account servicing institution, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### **6.1.9.3.1.3 PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInflId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by a sending party, to unambiguously identify the payment information group within the message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### **6.1.9.3.1.4 InstructionIdentification <InstrId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an instructing party for an instructed party, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

*Usage:* The instruction identification is a point to point reference that can be used between the instructing party and the instructed party to refer to the individual instruction. It can be included in several messages related to the instruction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### **6.1.9.3.1.5 EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the initiating party, to unambiguously identify the transaction. This identification is passed on, unchanged, throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

*Usage:* The end-to-end identification can be used for reconciliation or to link tasks relating to the transaction. It can be included in several messages related to the transaction.

*Usage:* In case there are technical limitations to pass on multiple references, the end-to-end identification must be passed on throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### **6.1.9.3.1.6 UETR <UETR>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Universally unique identifier to provide an end-to-end reference of a payment transaction.

*Datatype:* "UUIDv4Identifier" on page 331

#### **6.1.9.3.1.7 TransactionIdentification <TxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the first instructing agent, to unambiguously identify the transaction that is passed on, unchanged, throughout the entire interbank chain.

*Usage:* The transaction identification can be used for reconciliation, tracking or to link tasks relating to the transaction on the interbank level.

*Usage:* The instructing agent has to make sure that the transaction identification is unique for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.9.3.1.8 MandateIdentification <MndtId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.9.3.1.9 ChequeNumber <ChqNb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identifier for a cheque as assigned by the agent.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.9.3.1.10 ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

Usage: In case there are technical limitations to pass on multiple references, the end-to-end identification must be passed on throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.9.3.1.11 AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the securities transaction as known by the securities account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.9.3.1.12 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the securities transaction as known by the securities account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.9.3.1.13 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a securities transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.9.3.1.14 ProcessingIdentification <PrcgId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the securities transaction assigned by the processor of the instruction other than the securities account owner, the securities account servicer and the market infrastructure.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.9.3.1.15 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Proprietary reference related to the underlying transaction.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryReference1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		151
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		151

#### 6.1.9.3.1.15.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the type of reference reported.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.9.3.1.15.2 Reference <Ref>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary reference specification related to the underlying transaction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.9.3.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money in the cash transaction.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.9.3.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the transaction is a credit or a debit transaction.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 313

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

**6.1.9.3.4 AmountDetails <AmtDtls>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides detailed information on the original amount.

*Usage:* This component (on transaction level) should be used in case booking is for a single transaction and the original amount is different from the entry amount. It can also be used in case individual original amounts are provided in case of a batch or aggregate booking.



**AmountDetails <AmtDtls>** contains the following elements (see "AmountAndCurrencyExchange3" on page 63 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[0..1]			65
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	66
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			66
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	66
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	67
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	67
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		67
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		67
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		68
	TransactionAmount <TxAmt>	[0..1]			68
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	68
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			68
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	69
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	69
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	69
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		70
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		70
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		70
	CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>	[0..1]			70
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	71
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			71
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	72
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	72
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	72
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		73
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		73
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		73
	AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>	[0..1]			73
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	74
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			74

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	75
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	75
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	75
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		76
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		76
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		76
	ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>	[0..*]			76
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		77
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	77
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			77
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	78
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	78
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	78
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		79
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		79
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		79

#### 6.1.9.3.5 Availability <Avlbt>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Indicates when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

*Usage:* This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.

*Example:* When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).

**Availability <Avlbt>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAvailability1](#)" on page 131 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			131
{Or	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		132
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		132
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	132
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132

### 6.1.9.3.6 BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to fully identify the type of underlying transaction resulting in an entry.

*Impacted by:* C10 "DomainOrProprietaryRule", C11 "FamilyAndSubFamilyRule"

**BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>** contains the following elements (see "BankTransactionCodeStructure4" on page 86 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		86
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			87
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		87
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		87

#### Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True

/Domain Must be present

Or /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

### 6.1.9.3.7 Charges <Chrgs>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides information on the charges, pre-advised or included in the entry amount.

Usage: This component (on transaction level) can be used in case the booking is for a single transaction, and charges are included in the entry amount. It can also be used in case individual charge amounts are applied to individual transactions in case of a batch or aggregate amount booking.

**Charges <Chrgs>** contains the following elements (see "Charges6" on page 184 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	184
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		184

### 6.1.9.3.8 Interest <Intrst>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details of the interest amount included in the entry amount.

Usage: This component (on transaction level) can be used if the booking is for a single transaction, and interest amount is included in the entry amount. It can also be used if individual interest amounts are applied to individual transactions in the case of a batch or aggregate amount booking.

**Interest <Intrst>** contains the following elements (see "TransactionInterest4" on page 217 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalInterestAndTaxAmount <TtlIntrstAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	218
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			219
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	220
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		221
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			221
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		221
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		221
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]			222
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		222
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			222
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			223
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		223
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			224
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		225
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		225
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		225
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	225
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		225
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		226
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			226
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		226
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		226
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	226

#### 6.1.9.3.9 RelatedParties <RltdPties>

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the parties related to the underlying transaction.

**RelatedParties <RltdPties>** contains the following **TransactionParties9** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		157
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		157
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C17, C15	157
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		158
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		158
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C17, C15	159
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		159
	TradingParty <TradgPty>	[0..1]	±		160
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			160
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		160
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		160

#### 6.1.9.3.9.1 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that initiated the payment that is reported in the entry.

**InitiatingParty <InitgPty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 248 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		249
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		249

#### 6.1.9.3.9.2 Debtor <Dbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 248 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		249
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		249

#### 6.1.9.3.9.3 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor.

*Impacted by:* C17 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C15 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 58 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		58
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		59
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	59
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		59
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		59

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 And /Proxy Must be present

#### 6.1.9.3.9.4 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>** contains one of the following elements (see "Party40Choice" on page 248 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		249
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		249

#### 6.1.9.3.9.5 Creditor <Cdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party to which an amount of money is due.

**Creditor <Cdtr>** contains one of the following elements (see "Party40Choice" on page 248 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		249
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		249

#### 6.1.9.3.9.6 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry has been posted as a result of the payment transaction.

*Impacted by:* C17 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C15 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 58 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		58
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		59
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	59
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		59
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		59

#### Constraints

- IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
And      /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 6.1.9.3.9.7 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

**UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>** contains one of the following elements (see "Party40Choice" on page 248 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		249
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		249

**6.1.9.3.9.8 TradingParty <TradgPty>***Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that plays an active role in planning and executing the transactions that create or liquidate investments of the investors assets, or that move the investor's assets from one investment to another. A trading party is a trade instructor, an investment decision-maker, a post trade administrator, or a trader. In the context of treasury, it is the party that negotiates and executes the treasury transaction.

**TradingParty <TradgPty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 248 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		249
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		249

**6.1.9.3.9.9 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Proprietary party related to the underlying transaction.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryParty5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		160
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		160

**6.1.9.3.9.9.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of proprietary party.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 335

**6.1.9.3.9.9.2 Party <Pty>***Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary party.

**Party <Pty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 248 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		249
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		249

**6.1.9.3.10 RelatedAgents <RltdAgt>***Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the agents related to the underlying transaction.



**RelatedAgents <RltdAgts>** contains the following **TransactionAgents5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		161
	InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		161
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		162
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		162
	IntermediaryAgent1 <IntrmyAgt1>	[0..1]	±		162
	IntermediaryAgent2 <IntrmyAgt2>	[0..1]	±		162
	IntermediaryAgent3 <IntrmyAgt3>	[0..1]	±		163
	ReceivingAgent <RcvgAgt>	[0..1]	±		163
	DeliveringAgent <DlvrAgt>	[0..1]	±		163
	IssuingAgent <IssgAgt>	[0..1]	±		164
	SettlementPlace <SttlmPlc>	[0..1]	±		164
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			164
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		164
	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		165

#### 6.1.9.3.10.1 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

**InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

#### 6.1.9.3.10.2 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

**InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

**6.1.9.3.10.3 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.**DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see ["BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6"](#) on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

**6.1.9.3.10.4 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.**CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see ["BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6"](#) on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

**6.1.9.3.10.5 IntermediaryAgent1 <IntrmyAgt1>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Agent between the debtor's agent and the creditor's agent.

Usage: If more than one intermediary agent is present, then IntermediaryAgent1 identifies the agent between the DebtorAgent and the IntermediaryAgent2.

**IntermediaryAgent1 <IntrmyAgt1>** contains the following elements (see ["BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6"](#) on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

**6.1.9.3.10.6 IntermediaryAgent2 <IntrmyAgt2>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Agent between the debtor's agent and the creditor's agent.

Usage: If more than two intermediary agents are present, then IntermediaryAgent2 identifies the agent between the IntermediaryAgent1 and the IntermediaryAgent3.

**IntermediaryAgent2 <IntrmyAgt2>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

#### 6.1.9.3.10.7 IntermediaryAgent3 <IntrmyAgt3>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent between the debtor's agent and the creditor's agent.

Usage: If IntermediaryAgent3 is present, then it identifies the agent between the IntermediaryAgent 2 and the CreditorAgent.

**IntermediaryAgent3 <IntrmyAgt3>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

#### 6.1.9.3.10.8 ReceivingAgent <RcvgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that receives securities from the delivering agent at the place of settlement, such as central securities depository.

Can also be used in the context of treasury operations.

**ReceivingAgent <RcvgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

#### 6.1.9.3.10.9 DeliveringAgent <DlvrgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that delivers securities to the receiving agent at the place of settlement, such as a central securities depository.

Can also be used in the context of treasury operations.

**DeliveringAgent <DlvrAggt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

#### 6.1.9.3.10.10 IssuingAgent <IssgAggt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity that has the right to issue securities.

**IssuingAgent <IssgAggt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

#### 6.1.9.3.10.11 SettlementPlace <SttlmPlc>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Place where settlement of the securities takes place.

Usage: This is typed by a financial institution identification as this is the standard way to identify a securities settlement agent/central system.

**SettlementPlace <SttlmPlc>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

#### 6.1.9.3.10.12 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Proprietary agent related to the underlying transaction.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryAgent4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		164
	Agent <Aggt>	[1..1]	±		165

##### 6.1.9.3.10.12.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of proprietary agent.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.9.3.10.12.2 Agent <Agt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Organisation established primarily to provide financial services.

**Agent <Agt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

#### 6.1.9.3.11 LocallInstrument <LclInstrm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* User community specific instrument.

Usage: This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.

**LocallInstrument <LclInstrm>** contains one of the following **LocallInstrument2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		165
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		165

##### 6.1.9.3.11.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalLocallInstrument1Code" on page 319

##### 6.1.9.3.11.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

##### 6.1.9.3.12 Purpose <Purp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Underlying reason for the payment transaction.

Usage: Purpose is used by the end-customers, that is initiating party, (ultimate) debtor, (ultimate) creditor to provide information concerning the nature of the payment. Purpose is a content element, which is not used for processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

**Purpose <Purp>** contains one of the following elements (see ["Purpose2Choice"](#) on page 216 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		216
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		216

#### 6.1.9.3.13 RelatedRemittanceInformation <RltdRmtInf>

*Presence:* [0..10]

*Definition:* Provides information related to the handling of the remittance information by any of the agents in the transaction processing chain.

**RelatedRemittanceInformation <RltdRmtInf>** contains the following elements (see ["RemittanceLocation7"](#) on page 260 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RemittanceIdentification <RmtId>	[0..1]	Text		260
	RemittanceLocationDetails <RmtLctnDtls>	[0..*]	±		261

#### 6.1.9.3.14 RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Structured information that enables the matching, that is reconciliation, of a payment with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an account receivable system.

**RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>** contains the following elements (see ["RemittanceInformation21"](#) on page 280 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		280
	Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		280

#### 6.1.9.3.15 RelatedDates <RltdDts>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the dates related to the underlying transactions.

**RelatedDates <RltdDts>** contains the following **TransactionDates3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AcceptanceDateTime <AcceptncDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		167
	TradeActivityContractualSettlementDate <TradActvtyCtrctlSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		167
	TradeDate <TradDt>	[0..1]	Date		167
	InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		167
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		167
	EndDate <EndDt>	[0..1]	Date		168
	TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		168
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			168
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		168
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		168

#### 6.1.9.3.15.1 AcceptanceDateTime <AcceptncDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Point in time when the payment order from the initiating party meets the processing conditions of the account servicing agent. This means that the account servicing agent has received the payment order and has applied checks such as authorisation, availability of funds.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 329

#### 6.1.9.3.15.2 TradeActivityContractualSettlementDate <TradActvtyCtrctlSttlmDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies when an amount of money should have contractually been credited or debited the account versus when the amount of money was actually settled (debited/credited) on the cash account.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 329

#### 6.1.9.3.15.3 TradeDate <TradDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date on which the trade was executed.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 329

#### 6.1.9.3.15.4 InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date on which the amount of money ceases to be available to the agent that owes it and when the amount of money becomes available to the agent to which it is due.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 329

#### 6.1.9.3.15.5 StartDate <StartDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the underlying transaction, such as a treasury transaction, an investment plan.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 329](#)

#### 6.1.9.3.15.6 EndDate <EndDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* End date of the underlying transaction, such as a treasury transaction, an investment plan.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 329](#)

#### 6.1.9.3.15.7 TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time of the underlying transaction.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime" on page 329](#)

#### 6.1.9.3.15.8 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Proprietary date related to the underlying transaction.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryDate3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		168
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		168

##### 6.1.9.3.15.8.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of date.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 335](#)

##### 6.1.9.3.15.8.2 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date in ISO format.

**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following elements (see ["DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 190](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		190
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		190

#### 6.1.9.3.16 RelatedPrice <RItdPric>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the price information related to the underlying transaction.



**RelatedPrice <RltdPric>** contains one of the following **TransactionPrice4Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	DealPrice <DealPric>	[1..1]	±		169
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..*]			169
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		169
	Price <Pric>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	169

#### 6.1.9.3.16.1 DealPrice <DealPric>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the price of the traded financial instrument.

This is the deal price of the individual trade transaction.

If there is only one trade transaction for the execution of the trade, then the deal price could equal the executed trade price (unless, for example, the price includes commissions or rounding, or some other factor has been applied to the deal price or the executed trade price, or both).

**DealPrice <DealPric>** contains the following elements (see "Price7" on page 259 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		259
	Value <Val>	[1..1]	±		259

#### 6.1.9.3.16.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Proprietary price specification related to the underlying transaction.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryPrice2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		169
	Price <Pric>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	169

##### 6.1.9.3.16.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of price.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

##### 6.1.9.3.16.2.2 Price <Pric>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary price specification related to the underlying transaction.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.9.3.17 RelatedQuantities <RltdQties>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the related quantities, such as securities, in the underlying transaction.

**RelatedQuantities <RltdQties>** contains one of the following **TransactionQuantities3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	±		170
Or	OriginalAndCurrentFaceAmount <OrgnlAndCurFaceAmt>	[1..1]	±		170
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]			171
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		171
	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	Text		171

#### 6.1.9.3.17.1 Quantity <Qty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the quantity (such as securities) in the underlying transaction.

**Quantity <Qty>** contains one of the following elements (see "FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice" on page 202 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Unit <Unit>	[1..1]	Quantity		203
Or	FaceAmount <FaceAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		203
Or}	AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>	[1..1]	Amount		203

#### 6.1.9.3.17.2 OriginalAndCurrentFaceAmount <OrgnlAndCurFaceAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Face amount and amortised value of security.

**OriginalAndCurrentFaceAmount <OrgnlAndCurFaceAmt>** contains the following elements (see "OriginalAndCurrentQuantities1" on page 288 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FaceAmount <FaceAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		288
	AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>	[1..1]	Amount		289

#### 6.1.9.3.17.3 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary quantities specification defined in the underlying transaction.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryQuantity1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		171
	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	Text		171

##### 6.1.9.3.17.3.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the type of proprietary quantity reported.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

##### 6.1.9.3.17.3.2 Quantity <Qty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the proprietary quantity in free format.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.9.3.18 FinancialInstrumentIdentification <FinInstrmId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a security, as assigned under a formal or proprietary identification scheme.

*Impacted by:* C8 "DescriptionPresenceRule", C9 "DescriptionUsageRule", C18 "ISINGuideline", C19 "ISINPresenceRule", C21 "OtherIdentificationPresenceRule"

**FinancialInstrumentIdentification <FinInstrmId>** contains the following elements (see "SecurityIdentification19" on page 200 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ISIN <ISIN>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		201
	OtherIdentification <OthrId>	[0..*]			201
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		202
	Suffix <Sfx>	[0..1]	Text		202
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		202
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		202

### Constraints

- **DescriptionPresenceRule**

If Description is not present then either ISIN or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

```
On Condition
  /Description is absent
Following Must be True
  /ISIN Must be present
Or    /OtherIdentification[*] Must be present
```

- **DescriptionUsageRule**

Description must be used alone as the last resort.

- **ISINGuideline**

When an ISIN code exists, it is strongly recommended that the ISIN be used.

- **ISINPresenceRule**

If ISIN is not present then either Description or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

```
On Condition
  /ISIN is absent
Following Must be True
  /OtherIdentification[*] Must be present
Or    /Description Must be present
```

- **OtherIdentificationPresenceRule**

If OtherIdentification is not present then either ISIN or Description must be present.

```
On Condition
  /OtherIdentification[*] is absent
Following Must be True
  /ISIN Must be present
Or    /Description Must be present
```

### 6.1.9.3.19 Tax <Tax>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the tax.

**Tax <Tax>** contains the following elements (see "TaxInformation10" on page 298 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		298
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		299
	AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		299
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		299
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		299
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	299
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	300
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		300
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		300
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		300

#### 6.1.9.3.20 ReturnInformation <RtrInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the return information.

*Impacted by:* C23 "ReturnReasonRule"

**ReturnInformation <RtrInf>** contains the following elements (see "PaymentReturnReason5" on page 289 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalBankTransactionCode <OrgnlBkTxCd>	[0..1]	±	C10, C11	289
	Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		290
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			290
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		291
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		291
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		291

#### Constraints

- **ReturnReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

On Condition

/Reason/Code is within DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleNarrative1Code

And /Reason is present

And /Reason/Code is present

Following Must be True  
/AdditionalInformation[\*] Must be present

#### 6.1.9.3.21 CorporateAction <CorpActn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the underlying corporate action.

**CorporateAction <CorpActn>** contains the following **CorporateAction9** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EventType <EvtTp>	[1..1]	Text		174
	EventIdentification <EvtId>	[1..1]	Text		174

##### 6.1.9.3.21.1 EventType <EvtTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of corporate action event, in a free-text format.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

##### 6.1.9.3.21.2 EventIdentification <EvtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a corporate action assigned by an official central body/entity within a given market.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.9.3.22 SafekeepingAccount <SfkpgAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Safekeeping or investment account. A safekeeping account is an account on which a securities entry is made. An investment account is an account between an investor(s) and a fund manager or a fund. The account can contain holdings in any investment fund or investment fund class managed (or distributed) by the fund manager, within the same fund family.

**SafekeepingAccount <SfkpgAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[SecuritiesAccount19](#)" on page 62 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		62
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		62
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		62

#### 6.1.9.3.23 CashDeposit <CshDpst>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides the details of a cash deposit for an amount of money in cash notes and/or coins.

**CashDeposit <CshDpst>** contains the following elements (see "CashDeposit1" on page 130 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NoteDenomination <NoteDnmtn>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	130
	NumberOfNotes <NbOfNotes>	[1..1]	Text		130
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	131

#### 6.1.9.3.24 CardTransaction <CardTx>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the data related to the card (number, scheme), terminal (number, identification) and transactional data used to uniquely identify a card transaction.

**CardTransaction <CardTx>** contains the following elements (see "CardTransaction18" on page 102 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			105
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			106
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		107
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		107
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		107
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		107
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		107
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			108
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		108
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		108
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			108
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		108
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		109
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		109
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		109
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		109
	POI <POI>	[0..1]			109
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		110
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		111
	GroupIdentification <GrpId>	[0..1]	Text		111
	Capabilities <Cpblties>	[0..1]			111
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		111
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		112
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		112
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			113
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		113
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		113
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		113
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			113



Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		114
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		114
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		114
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		115
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		115
	Transaction <Tx>	[0..1]			115
{Or	Aggregated <Aggtd>	[1..1]			117
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		117
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		118
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		118
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			118
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		118
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		118
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]	±		119
Or}	Individual <Indv>	[1..1]			119
	ICCRelatedData <ICCRltdData>	[0..1]	Text		121
	PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>	[0..1]			121
	CardPresent <CardPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		121
	CardholderPresent <CrhdldrPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		121
	OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>	[0..1]	Indicator		122
	AttendanceContext <AttdncCntxt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		122
	TransactionEnvironment <TxEnv>	[0..1]	CodeSet		122
	TransactionChannel <TxChanl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		122
	AttendantMessageCapable <AttdntMsgCpbl>	[0..1]	Indicator		123
	AttendantLanguage <AttdntLang>	[0..1]	CodeSet		123
	CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
	FallbackIndicator <FlbckInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		123
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[0..1]			124
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		125
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		125
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcnccltnId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	SaleReferenceNumber <SaleRefNb>	[0..1]	Text		126
	RePresentmentReason <RePresntmntRsn>	[0..1]	CodeSet		126
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		126
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	±		126
	Product <Pdct>	[0..1]			126
	ProductCode <PdctCd>	[1..1]	Text		127
	UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		127
	ProductQuantity <PdctQty>	[0..1]	Quantity		128
	UnitPrice <UnitPric>	[0..1]	Amount		128
	ProductAmount <PdctAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		128
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		129
	AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>	[0..1]	Text		129
	ValidationDate <VldtnDt>	[0..1]	Date		129
	ValidationSequenceNumber <VldtnSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		129
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±	C17, C15	129

#### 6.1.9.3.25 AdditionalTransactionInformation <AddtlTxInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details of the transaction.

*Datatype:* "Max500Text" on page 336

#### 6.1.9.3.26 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C25 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		242
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		242

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

### 6.1.9.4 EntryDetails10

*Definition:* Identifies the underlying transaction(s) and/or batched entries.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Batch <Btch>	[0..1]			179
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		179
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfId>	[0..1]	Text		180
	NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTx>	[0..1]	Text		180
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	180
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		180
	TransactionDetails <TxDtls>	[0..*]	±		180

#### 6.1.9.4.1 Batch <Btch>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on batched transactions.

**Batch <Btch>** contains the following **BatchInformation2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		179
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfId>	[0..1]	Text		180
	NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTx>	[0..1]	Text		180
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	180
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		180

##### 6.1.9.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the sending party, to unambiguously identify the batch of transactions.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.9.4.1.2 PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInflId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by a sending party, to unambiguously identify the payment information group within the message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.9.4.1.3 NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTx>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual transactions included in the batch.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 334

#### 6.1.9.4.1.4 TotalAmount <TtlAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money reported in the batch entry.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.9.4.1.5 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the batch entry is a credit or a debit entry.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 313

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 6.1.9.4.2 TransactionDetails <TxDtIs>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides information on the underlying transaction(s).

**TransactionDetails <TxDtIs>** contains the following elements (see "EntryTransaction11" on page 144 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	References <Refs>	[0..1]			148
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		148
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		148
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfId>	[0..1]	Text		149
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		149
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		149
	UETR <UETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		149
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	Text		149
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		150
	ChequeNumber <ChqNb>	[0..1]	Text		150
	ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>	[0..1]	Text		150
	AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		150
	AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		150
	MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfstrctrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		150
	ProcessingIdentification <PrcgId>	[0..1]	Text		150
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			150
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		151
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		151
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	151
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		151
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		152
	Availability <Avlby>	[0..*]	±		154
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[0..1]	±	C10, C11	155
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		155
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		155
	RelatedParties <RltdPties>	[0..1]			156
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		157
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		157

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C17, C15	157
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		158
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		158
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C17, C15	159
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		159
	TradingParty <TradgPty>	[0..1]	±		160
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			160
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		160
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		160
	RelatedAgents <RltdAgts>	[0..1]			160
	InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		161
	InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		161
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		162
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		162
	IntermediaryAgent1 <IntrmyAgt1>	[0..1]	±		162
	IntermediaryAgent2 <IntrmyAgt2>	[0..1]	±		162
	IntermediaryAgent3 <IntrmyAgt3>	[0..1]	±		163
	ReceivingAgent <RcvgAgt>	[0..1]	±		163
	DeliveringAgent <DlvrAgt>	[0..1]	±		163
	IssuingAgent <IssgAgt>	[0..1]	±		164
	SettlementPlace <SttlmPlc>	[0..1]	±		164
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			164
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		164
	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		165
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			165
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		165
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		165
	Purpose <Purp>	[0..1]	±		165
	RelatedRemittanceInformation <RltdRmtInf>	[0..10]	±		166
	RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>	[0..1]	±		166
	RelatedDates <RltdDts>	[0..1]			166

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AcceptanceDateTime <AccptncDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		167
	TradeActivityContractualSettlementDate <TradActvtyCtrctlSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		167
	TradeDate <TradDt>	[0..1]	Date		167
	InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		167
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		167
	EndDate <EndDt>	[0..1]	Date		168
	TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		168
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			168
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		168
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		168
	RelatedPrice <RltdPric>	[0..1]			168
{Or	DealPrice <DealPric>	[1..1]	±		169
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..*]			169
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		169
	Price <Pric>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	169
	RelatedQuantities <RltdQties>	[0..*]			170
{Or	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	±		170
Or	OriginalAndCurrentFaceAmount <OrgnlAndCurFaceAmt>	[1..1]	±		170
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]			171
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		171
	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	Text		171
	FinancialInstrumentIdentification <FinInstrmId>	[0..1]	±	C8, C9, C18, C19, C21	171
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]	±		172
	ReturnInformation <RtrInf>	[0..1]	±	C23	173
	CorporateAction <CorpActn>	[0..1]			174
	EventType <EvtTp>	[1..1]	Text		174
	EventIdentification <EvtId>	[1..1]	Text		174
	SafekeepingAccount <SfkpgAcct>	[0..1]	±		174
	CashDeposit <CshDpst>	[0..*]	±		174

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		175
	AdditionalTransactionInformation <AddtlTxInf>	[0..1]	Text		178
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C25	178

## 6.1.10 Charge

### 6.1.10.1 Charges6

*Definition:* Provides further details on the charges related to the payment transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	184
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		184

#### 6.1.10.1.1 TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total of all charges and taxes applied to the entry.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.10.1.2 Record <Rcrd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides details of the individual charges record.



**Record <Rcrd>** contains the following elements (see "ChargesRecord3" on page 185 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	186
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ChargeIncludedIndicator <ChrgInclInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		186
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		187
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		187
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		187
	Bearer  	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Agent <Agt>	[0..1]	±		188
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			188
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		188
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	188

### 6.1.10.2 ChargesRecord3

*Definition:* Provides further individual record details on the charges related to the payment transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	186
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ChargeIncludedIndicator <ChrgInclInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		186
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		187
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		187
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		187
	Bearer  	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Agent <Agt>	[0..1]	±		188
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			188
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		188
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	188

**6.1.10.2.1 Amount <Amt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Transaction charges to be paid by the charge bearer.*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.10.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Indicates whether the charges amount is a credit or a debit amount.*Usage:* A zero amount is considered to be a credit.*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 313

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

**6.1.10.2.3 ChargeIncludedIndicator <ChrgInclInd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Indicates whether the charge should be included in the amount or is added as pre-advice.*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "ChargeIncludedIndicator" on page 331):

- *Meaning When True:* Included
- *Meaning When False:* Pre-advised

**6.1.10.2.4 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the type of charge.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **ChargeType3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		187
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		187

#### 6.1.10.2.4.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Charge type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalChargeType1Code" on page 316

#### 6.1.10.2.4.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of charge in a proprietary form, as defined by the issuer.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification3" on page 206 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		206
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		206

#### 6.1.10.2.5 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the amount of the charge or fee.

*Datatype:* "PercentageRate" on page 333

#### 6.1.10.2.6 Bearer <Br>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies which party/parties will bear the charges associated with the processing of the payment transaction.

*Datatype:* "ChargeBearerType1Code" on page 311

CodeName	Name	Definition
DEBT	BorneByDebtor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the debtor.
CRED	BorneByCreditor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the creditor.
SHAR	Shared	In a credit transfer context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the debtor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the creditor. In a direct debit context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the creditor,

CodeName	Name	Definition
		transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the debtor.
SLEV	FollowingServiceLevel	Charges are to be applied following the rules agreed in the service level and/or scheme.

#### 6.1.10.2.7 Agent <Agt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that takes the transaction charges or to which the transaction charges are due.

**Agent <Agt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

#### 6.1.10.2.8 Tax <Tax>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the tax applied to charges.

**Tax <Tax>** contains the following **TaxCharges2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		188
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	188

##### 6.1.10.2.8.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference to unambiguously identify the nature of the tax levied, such as Value Added Tax (VAT).

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 335

##### 6.1.10.2.8.2 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the tax.

*Datatype:* "[PercentageRate](#)" on page 333

##### 6.1.10.2.8.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money resulting from the calculation of the tax.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

## 6.1.11 Date Period

### 6.1.11.1 DatePeriod2

*Definition:* Range of time defined by a start date and an end date.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		189
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		189

#### 6.1.11.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 329

#### 6.1.11.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 329

### 6.1.11.2 DatePeriod3

*Definition:* Range of time defined by a start date and an end date.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		189
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		190

#### 6.1.11.2.1 FromDate <FrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 329](#)

#### 6.1.11.2.2 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 329](#)

## 6.1.12 Date Time

### 6.1.12.1 DateAndDateTime2Choice

*Definition:* Choice between a date or a date and time format.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		190
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		190

#### 6.1.12.1.1 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 329](#)

#### 6.1.12.1.2 DateTime <DtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date and time.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime" on page 329](#)

## 6.1.13 Date Time Period

### 6.1.13.1 DateTimePeriod1

*Definition:* Time span defined by a start date and time, and an end date and time.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		190
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		191

#### 6.1.13.1.1 FromDateTime <FrDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the period starts.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime" on page 329](#)

**6.1.13.1.2 ToDateTime <ToDtTm>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Date and time at which the period ends.*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime" on page 329](#)**6.1.13.2 TimePeriodDetails1***Definition:* Particular time span specified between a start time and an end time. The time period cannot exceed 24 hours.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromTime <FrTm>	[1..1]	Time		191
	ToTime <ToTm>	[0..1]	Time		191

**6.1.13.2.1 FromTime <FrTm>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Time at which the time span starts.*Datatype:* ["ISOTime" on page 337](#)**6.1.13.2.2 ToTime <ToTm>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Time at which the time span ends.*Datatype:* ["ISOTime" on page 337](#)**6.1.13.3 DateOrDateTimePeriod1Choice***Definition:* Choice between a date or a date and time format for a period.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		191
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		192

**6.1.13.3.1 Date <Dt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Period expressed with dates.**Date <Dt>** contains the following elements (see ["DatePeriod2" on page 189](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		189
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		189

### 6.1.13.3.2 DateTime <DtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Period expressed a dates and times.

**DateTime <DtTm>** contains the following elements (see "DateTimePeriod1" on page 190 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		190
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		191

## 6.1.14 Document

### 6.1.14.1 CreditorReferenceInformation2

*Definition:* Reference information provided by the creditor to allow the identification of the underlying documents.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			192
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			192
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		193
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		193
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		193
	Reference <Ref>	[0..1]	Text		193

#### 6.1.14.1.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of creditor reference.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following **CreditorReferenceType2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			192
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		193
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		193
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		193

#### 6.1.14.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Coded or proprietary format creditor reference type.



**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **CreditorReferenceType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		193
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		193

#### 6.1.14.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of creditor reference, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "DocumentType3Code" on page 313

CodeName	Name	Definition
RADM	RemittanceAdviceMessage	Document is a remittance advice sent separately from the current transaction.
RPIN	RelatedPaymentInstruction	Document is a linked payment instruction to which the current payment instruction is related, for example, in a cover scenario.
FXDR	ForeignExchangeDealReference	Document is a pre-agreed or pre-arranged foreign exchange transaction to which the payment transaction refers.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.
SCOR	StructuredCommunicationReference	Document is a structured communication reference provided by the creditor to identify the referred transaction.

#### 6.1.14.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Creditor reference type, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.14.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the credit reference type.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.14.1.2 Reference <Ref>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously refer to the payment transaction.

*Usage:* If available, the initiating party should provide this reference in the structured remittance information, to enable reconciliation by the creditor upon receipt of the amount of money.

If the business context requires the use of a creditor reference or a payment remit identification, and only one identifier can be passed through the end-to-end chain, the creditor's reference or payment remittance identification should be quoted in the end-to-end transaction identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

## 6.1.15 Financial Institution Identification

### 6.1.15.1 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify a member of the clearing system.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]	±		194
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		194

#### 6.1.15.1.1 ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

**ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>** contains one of the following elements (see "ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice" on page 291 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		292
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		292

#### 6.1.15.1.2 MemberIdentification <Mmbld>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a member of a clearing system.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

### 6.1.15.2 FinancialInstitutionIdentification18

*Definition:* Specifies the details to identify a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	195
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		195
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		195
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		195
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		196
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		196

#### 6.1.15.2.1 BICFI <BICFI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Impacted by:* C4 "BICFI"

*Datatype:* "BICFIDec2014Identifier" on page 330

##### Constraints

- **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

#### 6.1.15.2.2 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information used to identify a member within a clearing system.

**ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>** contains the following elements (see "ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2" on page 194 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]	±		194
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		194

#### 6.1.15.2.3 LEI <LEI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity identifier of the financial institution.

*Datatype:* "LEIIdentifier" on page 331

#### 6.1.15.2.4 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 334

### 6.1.15.2.5 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

**PostalAddress <PstlAdr>** contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress24" on page 255 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			255
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		256
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		256
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		256
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		256
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		257
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		257
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		257
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		257
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		257
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		257
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		257
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		257
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		258
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	258
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		258

### 6.1.15.2.6 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an agent, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericFinancialIdentification1](#)" on page 199 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		199
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			200
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		200
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		200
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		200

### 6.1.15.3 BranchData3

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		197
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		197
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		197
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		197

#### 6.1.15.3.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a branch of a financial institution.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 335

#### 6.1.15.3.2 LEI <LEI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity identification for the branch of the financial institution.

*Datatype:* "[LEIIdentifier](#)" on page 331

#### 6.1.15.3.3 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 334

#### 6.1.15.3.4 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

**PostalAddress <PstIAdr>** contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress24" on page 255 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			255
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		256
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		256
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		256
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		256
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		257
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		257
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		257
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		257
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		257
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		257
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		257
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		257
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		258
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	258
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		258

#### 6.1.15.4 BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution or a branch of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

##### 6.1.15.4.1 FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution, as assigned under an internationally recognised or proprietary identification scheme.

**FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>** contains the following elements (see "FinancialInstitutionIdentification18" on page 194 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	195
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		195
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		195
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		195
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		196
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		196

#### 6.1.15.4.2 BranchIdentification <BrnchId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

*Usage:* This component should be used in case the identification information in the financial institution component does not provide identification up to branch level.

**BranchIdentification <BrnchId>** contains the following elements (see "BranchData3" on page 197 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		197
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		197
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		197
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		197

#### 6.1.15.5 GenericFinancialIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to an identification of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		199
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			200
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		200
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		200
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		200

##### 6.1.15.5.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.15.5.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **FinancialIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		200
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		200

##### 6.1.15.5.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code" on page 318

##### 6.1.15.5.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.15.5.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

## 6.1.16 Financial Instrument

### 6.1.16.1 SecurityIdentification19

*Definition:* Identification of a security.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ISIN <ISIN>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		201
	OtherIdentification <OthrId>	[0..*]			201
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		202
	Suffix <Sfx>	[0..1]	Text		202
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		202
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		202



**Constraints**

- **DescriptionPresenceRule**

If Description is not present then either ISIN or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

```
On Condition
    /Description is absent
Following Must be True
    /ISIN Must be present
Or    /OtherIdentification[*] Must be present
```

- **DescriptionUsageRule**

Description must be used alone as the last resort.

- **ISINGuideline**

When an ISIN code exists, it is strongly recommended that the ISIN be used.

- **ISINPresenceRule**

If ISIN is not present then either Description or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

```
On Condition
    /ISIN is absent
Following Must be True
    /OtherIdentification[*] Must be present
Or    /Description Must be present
```

- **OtherIdentificationPresenceRule**

If OtherIdentification is not present then either ISIN or Description must be present.

```
On Condition
    /OtherIdentification[*] is absent
Following Must be True
    /ISIN Must be present
Or    /Description Must be present
```

#### 6.1.16.1.1 ISIN <ISIN>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* International Securities Identification Number (ISIN). A numbering system designed by the United Nation's International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO). The ISIN is composed of a 2-character prefix representing the country of issue, followed by the national security number (if one exists), and a check digit. Each country has a national numbering agency that assigns ISIN numbers for securities in that country.

*Datatype:* "ISINOct2015Identifier" on page 330

#### 6.1.16.1.2 OtherIdentification <Othrid>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Identification of a security by proprietary or domestic identification scheme.

**OtherIdentification <OthrId>** contains the following **OtherIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		202
	Suffix <Sfx>	[0..1]	Text		202
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		202

#### 6.1.16.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a security.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.16.1.2.2 Suffix <Sfx>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the suffix of the security identification.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 334

#### 6.1.16.1.2.3 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of the identification.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "IdentificationSource3Choice" on page 204 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		204
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		205

#### 6.1.16.1.3 Description <Desc>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Textual description of a security instrument.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 334

## 6.1.17 Financial Instrument Quantity

### 6.1.17.1 FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice

*Definition:* Choice between formats for the quantity of security.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Unit <Unit>	[1..1]	Quantity		203
Or	FaceAmount <FaceAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		203
Or}	AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>	[1..1]	Amount		203

#### 6.1.17.1.1 Unit <Unit>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Quantity expressed as a number, for example, a number of shares.

*Datatype:* "DecimalNumber" on page 332

#### 6.1.17.1.2 FaceAmount <FaceAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Quantity expressed as an amount representing the face amount, that is, the principal, of a debt instrument.

*Datatype:* "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### 6.1.17.1.3 AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Quantity expressed as an amount representing the current amortised face amount of a bond, for example, a periodic reduction/increase of a bond's principal amount.

*Datatype:* "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

## 6.1.18 Identification Information

### 6.1.18.1 GenericIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to an identification, for example party identification or account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		203
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		203
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		204

#### 6.1.18.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by an institution.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.18.1.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.18.1.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.18.2 GenericIdentification30

*Definition:* Information related to an identification, for example, party identification or account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Issuer <Issr>	[1..1]	Text		204
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		204

#### 6.1.18.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary information, often a code, issued by the data source scheme issuer.

*Datatype:* "Exact4AlphaNumericText" on page 333

#### 6.1.18.2.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.18.2.3 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Short textual description of the scheme.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.18.3 IdentificationSource3Choice

*Definition:* Choice between source of identification of a financial instrument.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		204
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		205

#### 6.1.18.3.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification source, as assigned via a pre-determined code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalFinancialInstrumentIdentificationType1Code" on page 318

#### 6.1.18.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification source using a proprietary identification scheme.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.18.4 GenericIdentification32

*Definition:* Identification of an entity.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		205
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		205
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		206
	ShortName <ShrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		206

##### 6.1.18.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the entity.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

##### 6.1.18.4.2 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of identified entity.

*Datatype:* "PartyType3Code" on page 323

CodeName	Name	Definition
OPOI	OriginatingPOI	Point Of Interaction initiating the card payment transaction.
MERC	Merchant	Merchant providing goods and service in the card payment transaction.
ACCP	Acceptor	Card acceptor, party accepting the card and presenting transaction data to the acquirer.
ITAG	IntermediaryAgent	Party acting on behalf of other parties to process or forward data to other parties.
ACQR	Acquirer	Entity acquiring card transactions.
CISS	CardIssuer	Party that issues cards.
DLIS	Delegatelssuer	Party to whom the card issuer delegates to authorise card payment transactions.

**6.1.18.4.3 Issuer <Issr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Entity assigning the identification (for example merchant, acceptor, acquirer, or tax authority).*Datatype:* "PartyType4Code" on page 323

CodeName	Name	Definition
MERC	Merchant	Merchant providing goods and service in the card payment transaction.
ACCP	Acceptor	Card acceptor, party accepting the card and presenting transaction data to the acquirer.
ITAG	IntermediaryAgent	Party acting on behalf of other parties to process or forward data to other parties.
ACQR	Acquirer	Entity acquiring card transactions.
CISS	CardIssuer	Party that issues cards.
TAXH	TaxAuthority	Tax authority.

**6.1.18.4.4 ShortName <ShrtNm>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Name of the entity.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.18.5 GenericIdentification3***Definition:* Information related to an identification, for example, party identification or account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		206
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		206

**6.1.18.5.1 Identification <Id>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name or number assigned by an entity to enable recognition of that entity, for example, account identifier.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.18.5.2 Issuer <Issr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

## 6.1.19 Miscellaneous

### 6.1.19.1 NumberAndSumOfTransactions1

*Definition:* Set of elements providing the total sum of entries.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		207

#### 6.1.19.1.1 NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual entries included in the report.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 334

#### 6.1.19.1.2 Sum <Sum>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total of all individual entries included in the report.

*Datatype:* "DecimalNumber" on page 332

### 6.1.19.2 AccountInterest4

*Definition:* Provides further details on the interest that applies to the account at a particular moment in time.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			208
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		208
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		209
	Rate <Rate>	[0..*]			209
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		209
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			210
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			210
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			211
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		212
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		212
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		212
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		212
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	212
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		213
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		213
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			213
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		213
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		213
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	213

#### 6.1.19.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **InterestType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		208
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		209

##### 6.1.19.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]



*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest.

*Datatype:* "InterestType1Code" on page 322

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDY	IntraDay	During or within a business day.
OVNR	OverNight	Period of time between the end of a business day and the start of the next business day (usually the day after).

#### 6.1.19.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest in uncoded form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.19.2.2 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to qualify the interest rate.

**Rate <Rate>** contains the following **Rate4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		209
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			210
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			210
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			211
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		212
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		212
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		212
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		212
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	212

#### 6.1.19.2.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest rate.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "RateType4Choice" on page 260 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Percentage <Pctg>	[1..1]	Rate		260
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	Text		260

#### 6.1.19.2.2.2 ValidityRange <VldtyRg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* An amount range where the interest rate is applicable.

**ValidityRange <VldtyRg>** contains the following **ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmountRange2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			210
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			211
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		212
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		212
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		212
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		212
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	212

#### 6.1.19.2.2.2.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified amount or amount range.

**Amount <Amt>** contains one of the following **ImpliedCurrencyAmountRange1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			211
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		212
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		212
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		212

**6.1.19.2.2.1.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.**FromAmount <FrAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 80 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		80
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		80

**6.1.19.2.2.1.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.**ToAmount <ToAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 80 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		80
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		80

**6.1.19.2.2.1.3 FromToAmount <FrToAmt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Range of valid amount values.**FromToAmount <FrToAmt>** contains the following **FromToAmountRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		211
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		212

**6.1.19.2.2.1.3.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.**FromAmount <FrAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 80 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		80
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		80

**6.1.19.2.2.1.3.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.**ToAmount <ToAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 80 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		80
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		80

**6.1.19.2.2.1.4 EqualAmount <EQAmt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Exact value an amount must match to be considered valid.*Datatype:* "[ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 307**6.1.19.2.2.1.5 NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Value that an amount must not match to be considered valid.*Datatype:* "[ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 307**6.1.19.2.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Indicates whether the amount is a credited or debited amount.*Datatype:* "[CreditDebitCode](#)" on page 313

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

**6.1.19.2.2.3 Currency <Ccy>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Medium of exchange of value, used to qualify an amount.*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)*Datatype:* "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode](#)" on page 308**Constraints**

- ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.19.2.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for the calculation of the interest.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see ["DateTimePeriod1"](#) on page 190 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		190
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		191

#### 6.1.19.2.4 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the interest.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 335

#### 6.1.19.2.5 Tax <Tax>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the tax applied to charges.

**Tax <Tax>** contains the following **TaxCharges2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		213
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		213
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	213

##### 6.1.19.2.5.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference to unambiguously identify the nature of the tax levied, such as Value Added Tax (VAT).

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 335

##### 6.1.19.2.5.2 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the tax.

*Datatype:* ["PercentageRate"](#) on page 333

##### 6.1.19.2.5.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money resulting from the calculation of the tax.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 6.1.19.3 ReportingSource1Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the source used to generate the reporting.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		214
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		214

#### 6.1.19.3.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reporting source, as published in an external reporting source code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalReportingSource1Code" on page 320

#### 6.1.19.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reporting source, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

### 6.1.19.4 SequenceRange1Choice

*Definition:* Specifies a choice of sequences.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	FromToSequence <FrToSeq>	[1..*]			215
	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	EqualSequence <EQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		216
Or}	NotEqualSequence <NEQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		216

#### 6.1.19.4.1 FromSequence <FrSeq>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start sequence of the range.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.19.4.2 ToSequence <ToSeq>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End sequence of the range.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.19.4.3 FromToSequence <FrToSeq>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Particular sequence range specified between a start sequence and an end sequence.

**FromToSequence <FrToSeq>** contains the following **SequenceRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215

##### 6.1.19.4.3.1 FromSequence <FrSeq>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start sequence of the range.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

##### 6.1.19.4.3.2 ToSequence <ToSeq>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End sequence of the range.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.19.4.4 EqualSequence <EQSeq>***Presence:* [1..\*]*Definition:* Specified sequence to match.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.19.4.5 NotEqualSequence <NEQSeq>***Presence:* [1..\*]*Definition:* Specified sequence to be excluded.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.19.5 Purpose2Choice***Definition:* Specifies the underlying reason for the payment transaction.

Usage: Purpose is used by the end-customers, that is initiating party, (ultimate) debtor, (ultimate) creditor to provide information concerning the nature of the payment. Purpose is a content element, which is not used for processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		216
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		216

**6.1.19.5.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Underlying reason for the payment transaction, as published in an external purpose code list.*Datatype:* "ExternalPurpose1Code" on page 320**6.1.19.5.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Purpose, in a proprietary form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.19.6 OriginalBusinessQuery1**

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the original requestor, to unambiguously identify the business query message.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		217
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		217
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		217



**6.1.19.6.1 MessageIdIdentification <MsgId>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the original initiating party, to unambiguously identify the original query message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.19.6.2 MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the query message name identifier to which the message refers.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.19.6.3 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 329

**6.1.19.7 TransactionInterest4**

*Definition:* Provide further details on transaction specific interest information that applies to the underlying transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalInterestAndTaxAmount <TtlIntrstAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	218
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			219
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	220
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		221
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			221
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		221
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		221
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]			222
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		222
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			222
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			223
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		223
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			224
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		225
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		225
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		225
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	225
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		225
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		226
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			226
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		226
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		226
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	226

#### 6.1.19.7.1 TotalInterestAndTaxAmount <TtlIntrstAndTaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of interests and taxes included in the entry amount.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.19.7.2 Record <Rcrd>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Individual interest record.

**Record <Rcrd>** contains the following **InterestRecord2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	220
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		221
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			221
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		221
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		221
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]			222
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		222
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			222
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			223
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		223
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			224
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		225
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		225
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		225
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	225
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		225
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		226
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			226
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		226
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		226
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	226

#### 6.1.19.7.2.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of interest included in the entry amount.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.19.7.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the interest amount included in the entry is credit or debit amount.

*Usage:* A zero amount is considered to be a credit.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 313

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

**6.1.19.7.2.3 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **InterestType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		221
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		221

**6.1.19.7.2.3.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest.

*Datatype:* "InterestType1Code" on page 322

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDY	IntraDay	During or within a business day.
OVN	OverNight	Period of time between the end of a business day and the start of the next business day (usually the day after).

**6.1.19.7.2.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest in uncoded form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.19.7.2.4 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to qualify the interest rate.

**Rate <Rate>** contains the following **Rate4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		222
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			222
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			223
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		223
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			224
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		225
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		225
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		225
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	225

##### 6.1.19.7.2.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest rate.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "RateType4Choice" on page 260 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Percentage <Pctg>	[1..1]	Rate		260
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	Text		260

##### 6.1.19.7.2.4.2 ValidityRange <VldtyRg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* An amount range where the interest rate is applicable.

**ValidityRange <VldtyRg>** contains the following **ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmountRange2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			223
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		223
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			224
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		225
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		225
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		225
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	225

#### 6.1.19.7.2.4.2.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified amount or amount range.

**Amount <Amt>** contains one of the following **ImpliedCurrencyAmountRange1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		223
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			224
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		225
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		225

#### 6.1.19.7.2.4.2.1.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.

**FromAmount <FrAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 80 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		80
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		80

#### 6.1.19.7.2.4.2.1.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.

**ToAmount <ToAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 80 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		80
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		80

#### 6.1.19.7.2.4.2.1.3 FromToAmount <FrToAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Range of valid amount values.

**FromToAmount <FrToAmt>** contains the following **FromToAmountRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		224
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		224

#### 6.1.19.7.2.4.2.1.3.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.

**FromAmount <FrAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 80 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		80
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		80

#### 6.1.19.7.2.4.2.1.3.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.



**ToAmount <ToAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 80 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		80
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		80

#### 6.1.19.7.2.4.2.1.4 EqualAmount <EQAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Exact value an amount must match to be considered valid.

*Datatype:* "[ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 307

#### 6.1.19.7.2.4.2.1.5 NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Value that an amount must not match to be considered valid.

*Datatype:* "[ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 307

#### 6.1.19.7.2.4.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the amount is a credited or debited amount.

*Datatype:* "[CreditDebitCode](#)" on page 313

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 6.1.19.7.2.4.2.3 Currency <Ccy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Medium of exchange of value, used to qualify an amount.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode](#)" on page 308

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.19.7.2.5 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for the calculation of the interest.

**FromDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see ["DateTimePeriod1"](#) on page 190 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		190
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		191

#### 6.1.19.7.2.6 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the interest.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 335

#### 6.1.19.7.2.7 Tax <Tax>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the tax applied to charges.

**Tax <Tax>** contains the following **TaxCharges2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		226
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		226
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	226

##### 6.1.19.7.2.7.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference to unambiguously identify the nature of the tax levied, such as Value Added Tax (VAT).

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 335

##### 6.1.19.7.2.7.2 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the tax.

*Datatype:* ["PercentageRate"](#) on page 333

##### 6.1.19.7.2.7.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money resulting from the calculation of the tax.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 307

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.19.8 TotalTransactions6**

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide summary information on entries.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalEntries <TtlNtries>	[0..1]			227
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		228
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		228
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		228
	TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		228
	TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		228
	TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>	[0..*]			229
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		229
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		229
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		229
	CreditEntries <CdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		230
	DebitEntries <DbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		230
	ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		230
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	230
	Availability <Avlbt>	[0..*]	±		231
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		231

**6.1.19.8.1 TotalEntries <TtlNtries>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the total number and sum of debit and credit entries.

**TotalEntries <TtlNtries>** contains the following **NumberAndSumOfTransactions4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		228
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		228
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 6.1.19.8.1.1 NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual entries included in the report.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 334

#### 6.1.19.8.1.2 Sum <Sum>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total of all individual entries included in the report.

*Datatype:* "DecimalNumber" on page 332

#### 6.1.19.8.1.3 TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Resulting debit or credit amount of the netted amounts for all debit and credit entries.

**TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>** contains the following elements (see "AmountAndDirection35" on page 79 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Quantity		79
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		79

#### 6.1.19.8.2 TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the total number and sum of credit entries.

**TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>** contains the following elements (see "NumberAndSumOfTransactions1" on page 207 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		207

#### 6.1.19.8.3 TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the total number and sum of debit entries.

**TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>** contains the following elements (see "NumberAndSumOfTransactions1" on page 207 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		207

#### 6.1.19.8.4 TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the total number and sum of entries per bank transaction code.

**TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>** contains the following **TotalsPerBankTransactionCode5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		229
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		229
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		229
	CreditEntries <CdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		230
	DebitEntries <DbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		230
	ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		230
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	230
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		231
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		231

##### 6.1.19.8.4.1 NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual entries for the bank transaction code.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 334

##### 6.1.19.8.4.2 Sum <Sum>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total of all individual entries included in the report.

*Datatype:* "DecimalNumber" on page 332

##### 6.1.19.8.4.3 TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total debit or credit amount that is the result of the netted amounts for all debit and credit entries per bank transaction code.

**TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection35](#)" on page 79 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Quantity		79
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		79

#### 6.1.19.8.4.4 CreditEntries <CdtNtries>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual credit entries for the bank transaction code.

**CreditEntries <CdtNtries>** contains the following elements (see "[NumberAndSumOfTransactions1](#)" on page 207 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		207

#### 6.1.19.8.4.5 DebitEntries <DbtNtries>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual debit entries for the bank transaction code.

**DebitEntries <DbtNtries>** contains the following elements (see "[NumberAndSumOfTransactions1](#)" on page 207 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		207

#### 6.1.19.8.4.6 ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the bank transaction code is related to booked or forecast items.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 331):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.1.19.8.4.7 BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to fully identify the type of underlying transaction resulting in an entry.

*Impacted by:* [C10 "DomainOrProprietaryRule"](#), [C11 "FamilyAndSubFamilyRule"](#)

**BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>** contains the following elements (see "BankTransactionCodeStructure4" on page 86 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		86
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			87
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		87
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		87

#### Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True

/Domain Must be present

Or /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

#### 6.1.19.8.4.8 Availability <Avlbt>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to indicate when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

**Availability <Avlbt>** contains the following elements (see "CashAvailability1" on page 131 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			131
{Or	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		132
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		132
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	132
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132

#### 6.1.19.8.4.9 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates the date (and time) of the transaction summary.

**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following elements (see ["DateAndDateTime2Choice"](#) on page 190 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		190
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		190

### 6.1.19.9 GroupHeader81

*Definition:* Provides further details on the message.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		232
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		232
	MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>	[0..1]	±		232
	MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>	[0..1]	±		233
	OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>	[0..1]	±		233
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		233

#### 6.1.19.9.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the account servicing institution, and sent to the account owner or the party authorised to receive the message, to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The account servicing institution has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per account owner for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 335

#### 6.1.19.9.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime"](#) on page 329

#### 6.1.19.9.3 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party authorised by the account owner to receive information about movements on the account.

*Usage:* MessageRecipient should only be identified when different from the account owner.



**MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 245 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		245
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		246
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	246
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		247

#### 6.1.19.9.4 MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the page number of the message.

Usage: The pagination of the message is only allowed when agreed between the parties.

**MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>** contains the following elements (see "[Pagination1](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PageNumber <PgNb>	[1..1]	Text		235
	LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		235

#### 6.1.19.9.5 OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the original requestor, to unambiguously identify the business query message.

**OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>** contains the following elements (see "[OriginalBusinessQuery1](#)" on page 216 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		217
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		217
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		217

#### 6.1.19.9.6 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details of the message.

*Datatype:* "[Max500Text](#)" on page 336

### 6.1.19.10 GroupHeader77

*Definition:* Provides further details on the message.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		234
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234
	MessageSender <MsgSndr>	[0..1]	±		234

#### 6.1.19.10.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the account owner or the party authorised to send the message, and sent to the account servicing institution, to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The sender has to make sure that 'MessageIdentification' is unique per account servicing institution for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.19.10.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 329

#### 6.1.19.10.3 MessageSender <MsgSndr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the party that is sending the message, when different from the account owner.

**MessageSender <MsgSndr>** contains one of the following elements (see "Party40Choice" on page 248 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		249
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		249

### 6.1.19.11 Pagination1

*Definition:* Number used to sequence pages when it is not possible for data to be conveyed in a single message and the data has to be split across several pages (messages).

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PageNumber <PgNb>	[1..1]	Text		235
	LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		235

**6.1.19.11.1 PageNumber <PgNb>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Page number.*Datatype:* "Max5NumericText" on page 336**6.1.19.11.2 LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Indicates the last page.*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "YesNoIndicator" on page 331):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

**6.1.19.12 TransactionIdentifier1***Definition:* Identification of the transaction in an unambiguous way.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		235
	TransactionReference <TxRef>	[1..1]	Text		235

**6.1.19.12.1 TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Local date and time of the transaction assigned by the POI (Point Of Interaction).*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 329**6.1.19.12.2 TransactionReference <TxRef>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Identification of the transaction that has to be unique for a time period.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.19.13 RemittanceAmount2***Definition:* Nature of the amount and currency on a document referred to in the remittance section, typically either the original amount due/payable or the amount actually remitted for the referenced document.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	236
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			237
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			237
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		237
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		237
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	237
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	238
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			238
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			238
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		239
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		239
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	239
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			239
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	240
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		240
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		240
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		240
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	241

#### 6.1.19.13.1 DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount specified is the exact amount due and payable to the creditor.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.19.13.2 DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Amount specified for the referred document is the amount of discount to be applied to the amount due and payable to the creditor.**DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>** contains the following **DiscountAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			237
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		237
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		237
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	237

**6.1.19.13.2.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the type of the amount.**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **DiscountAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		237
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		237

**6.1.19.13.2.1.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.*Datatype:* "ExternalDiscountAmountType1Code" on page 317**6.1.19.13.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.19.13.2.2 Amount <Amt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Amount of money, which has been typed.*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.19.13.3 CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount specified for the referred document is the amount of a credit note.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.19.13.4 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Quantity of cash resulting from the calculation of the tax.

**TaxAmount <TaxAmt>** contains the following **TaxAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			238
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		239
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		239
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	239

**6.1.19.13.4.1 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the amount.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **TaxAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		239
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		239

#### 6.1.19.13.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalTaxAmountType1Code" on page 321

#### 6.1.19.13.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.19.13.4.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money, which has been typed.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.19.13.5 AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies detailed information on the amount and reason of the document adjustment.

**AdjustmentAmountAndReason** <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn> contains the following **DocumentAdjustment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	240
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		240
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		240
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		240

#### 6.1.19.13.5.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money of the document adjustment.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.19.13.5.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the adjustment must be subtracted or added to the total amount.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 313

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 6.1.19.13.5.3 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the adjustment.

*Datatype:* "Max4Text" on page 336

#### 6.1.19.13.5.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]



*Definition:* Provides further details on the document adjustment.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 334

#### 6.1.19.13.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money remitted for the referred document.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.19.14 YieldedOrValueType1Choice

*Definition:* Choice of value type.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Yielded <Yldd>	[1..1]	Indicator		241
Or}	ValueType <ValTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241

##### 6.1.19.14.1 Yielded <Yldd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the price is expressed as a yield.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "YesNoIndicator" on page 331):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

##### 6.1.19.14.2 ValueType <ValTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of value in which the price is expressed.

*Datatype:* "PriceValueType1Code" on page 324

CodeName	Name	Definition
DISC	Discount	Price expressed as a number of percentage points below par, for

CodeName	Name	Definition
		example, a discount price of 2.0% equals a price of 98 when par is 100.
PREM	Premium	Price expressed as a number of percentage points above par, for example, a premium price of 2.0% equals a price of 102 when par is 100.
PARV	Par	Price is the face amount.

### 6.1.19.15 SupplementaryData1

*Definition:* Additional information that can not be captured in the structured fields and/or any other specific block.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		242
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		242

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

#### 6.1.19.15.1 PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous reference to the location where the supplementary data must be inserted in the message instance.

In the case of XML, this is expressed by a valid XPath.

*Datatype:* "Max350Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.19.15.2 Envelope <Envlp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Technical element wrapping the supplementary data.

*Type:* (External Schema)

Technical component that contains the validated supplementary data information. This technical envelope allows to segregate the supplementary data information from any other information.

## 6.1.20 Organisation Identification

### 6.1.20.1 OrganisationIdentification29

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	243
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		243
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			243
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		244
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			244
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		244
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		244
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		244

#### 6.1.20.1.1 AnyBIC <AnyBIC>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Business identification code of the organisation.

*Impacted by:* C3 "AnyBIC"

*Datatype:* "AnyBICDec2014Identifier" on page 329

##### Constraints

- AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

#### 6.1.20.1.2 LEI <LEI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity identification as an alternate identification for a party.

*Datatype:* "LEIIdentifier" on page 331

#### 6.1.20.1.3 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an organisation, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following **GenericOrganisationIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		244
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			244
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		244
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		244
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		244

#### 6.1.20.1.3.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by an institution.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.20.1.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **OrganisationIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		244
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		244

#### 6.1.20.1.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code" on page 319

#### 6.1.20.1.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.20.1.3.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

## 6.1.21 Party Identification

### 6.1.21.1 PartyIdentification135

*Definition:* Specifies the identification of a person or an organisation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		245
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		246
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	246
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		247

#### 6.1.21.1.1 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 334

#### 6.1.21.1.2 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

**PostalAddress <PstIAdr>** contains the following elements (see "[PostalAddress24](#)" on page 255 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			255
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		256
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		256
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		256
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		256
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		257
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		257
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		257
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		257
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		257
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		257
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		257
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		257
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		258
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	258
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		258

#### 6.1.21.1.3 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a party.

**Identification <Id>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party38Choice](#)" on page 247 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]	±		247
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]	±		248

#### 6.1.21.1.4 CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Country in which a person resides (the place of a person's home). In the case of a company, it is the country from which the affairs of that company are directed.

*Impacted by:* C5 "Country"

*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 312

#### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### 6.1.21.1.5 ContactDetails <CtctDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to indicate how to contact the party.

**ContactDetails <CtctDtls>** contains the following elements (see "Contact4" on page 252 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		252
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		253
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		253
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		253
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		253
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		253
	EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>	[0..1]	Text		253
	JobTitle <JobTitl>	[0..1]	Text		253
	Responsibility <Rspnsblty>	[0..1]	Text		254
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		254
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			254
	ChannelType <ChanlTp>	[1..1]	Text		254
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		254
	PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		254

#### 6.1.21.2 Party38Choice

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <Orgld>	[1..1]	±		247
Or}	PrivateIdentification <Prvtld>	[1..1]	±		248

#### 6.1.21.2.1 OrganisationIdentification <Orgld>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

**OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>** contains the following elements (see "OrganisationIdentification29" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	243
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		243
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			243
	Identification </Id>	[1..1]	Text		244
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			244
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		244
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		244
	Issuer </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		244

#### 6.1.21.2.2 PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person, for example a passport.

**PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>** contains the following elements (see "PersonIdentification13" on page 249 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			250
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		250
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		250
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			251
	Identification </Id>	[1..1]	Text		251
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			251
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		252
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		252
	Issuer </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		252

#### 6.1.21.3 Party40Choice

*Definition:* Identification of a person, an organisation or a financial institution.



Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		249
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		249

#### 6.1.21.3.1 Party <Pty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a person or an organisation.

**Party <Pty>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 245 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		245
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		246
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	246
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		247

#### 6.1.21.3.2 Agent <Agt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a financial institution.

**Agent <Agt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		198
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		199

## 6.1.22 Person Identification

### 6.1.22.1 PersonIdentification13

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous way to identify a person.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			250
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		250
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		250
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			251
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		251
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			251
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		252
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		252
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		252

#### 6.1.22.1.1 DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and place of birth of a person.

**DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>** contains the following **DateAndPlaceOfBirth1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		250
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		250
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	251

##### 6.1.22.1.1.1 BirthDate <BirthDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date on which a person is born.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 329

##### 6.1.22.1.1.2 ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Province where a person was born.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

##### 6.1.22.1.1.3 CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* City where a person was born.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.22.1.1.4 CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Country where a person was born.

*Impacted by:* C5 "Country"

*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 312

#### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### 6.1.22.1.2 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Unique identification of a person, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following **GenericPersonIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		251
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			251
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		252
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		252
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		252

#### 6.1.22.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.22.1.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **PersonIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		252
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		252

**6.1.22.1.2.2.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.*Datatype:* "ExternalPersonIdentification1Code" on page 319**6.1.22.1.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.22.1.2.3 Issuer <Issr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.22.2 Contact4***Definition:* Specifies the details of the contact person.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		252
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		253
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		253
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		253
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		253
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		253
	EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>	[0..1]	Text		253
	JobTitle <JobTitl>	[0..1]	Text		253
	Responsibility <Rspnsblty>	[0..1]	Text		254
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		254
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			254
	ChannelType <ChanlTp>	[1..1]	Text		254
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		254
	PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		254

**6.1.22.2.1 NamePrefix <NmPrfx>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.*Datatype:* "NamePrefix2Code" on page 322

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

#### 6.1.22.2.2 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 334

#### 6.1.22.2.3 PhoneNumber <PhneNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collection of information that identifies a phone number, as defined by telecom services.

*Datatype:* "PhoneNumber" on page 337

#### 6.1.22.2.4 MobileNumber <MobNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collection of information that identifies a mobile phone number, as defined by telecom services.

*Datatype:* "PhoneNumber" on page 337

#### 6.1.22.2.5 FaxNumber <FaxNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collection of information that identifies a FAX number, as defined by telecom services.

*Datatype:* "PhoneNumber" on page 337

#### 6.1.22.2.6 EmailAddress <EmailAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Address for electronic mail (e-mail).

*Datatype:* "Max2048Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.22.2.7 EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Purpose for which an email address may be used.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.22.2.8 JobTitle <JobTitl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Title of the function.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.22.2.9 Responsibility <Rspnsblty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Role of a person in an organisation.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.22.2.10 Department <Dept>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 336

#### 6.1.22.2.11 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Contact details in another form.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following **OtherContact1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ChannelType <ChanlTp>	[1..1]	Text		254
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		254

#### 6.1.22.2.11.1 ChannelType <ChanlTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Method used to contact the financial institution's contact for the specific tax region.

*Datatype:* "Max4Text" on page 336

#### 6.1.22.2.11.2 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Communication value such as phone number or email address.

*Datatype:* "Max128Text" on page 334

#### 6.1.22.2.12 PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Preferred method used to reach the contact.

*Datatype:* "PreferredContactMethod1Code" on page 324

CodeName	Name	Definition
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.

CodeName	Name	Definition
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.

## 6.1.23 Postal Address

### 6.1.23.1 PostalAddress24

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			255
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		256
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		256
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		256
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		256
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		257
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		257
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		257
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		257
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		257
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		257
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		257
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		257
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		258
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	258
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		258

#### 6.1.23.1.1 AddressType <AdrTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the nature of the postal address.

**AddressType <AdrTp>** contains one of the following **AddressType3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		256
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		256

#### 6.1.23.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of address expressed as a code.

*Datatype:* "AddressType2Code" on page 309

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

#### 6.1.23.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of address expressed as a proprietary code.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 204 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Issuer <Issr>	[1..1]	Text		204
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		204

#### 6.1.23.1.2 Department <Dept>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 336

#### 6.1.23.1.3 SubDepartment <SubDept>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a sub-division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 336



**6.1.23.1.4 StreetName <StrtNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of a street or thoroughfare.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 336

**6.1.23.1.5 BuildingNumber <BldgNb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number that identifies the position of a building on a street.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 334

**6.1.23.1.6 BuildingName <BldgNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the building or house.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.23.1.7 Floor <Flr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Floor or storey within a building.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 336

**6.1.23.1.8 PostBox <PstBx>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Numbered box in a post office, assigned to a person or organisation, where letters are kept until called for.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 334

**6.1.23.1.9 Room <Room>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Building room number.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 336

**6.1.23.1.10 PostCode <PstCd>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifier consisting of a group of letters and/or numbers that is added to a postal address to assist the sorting of mail.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 334

**6.1.23.1.11 TownName <TwnNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of a built-up area, with defined boundaries, and a local government.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.23.1.12 TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specific location name within the town.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.23.1.13 DistrictName <DstrctNm>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identifies a subdivision within a country sub-division.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.23.1.14 CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identifies a subdivision of a country such as state, region, county.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.23.1.15 Country <Ctry>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Nation with its own government.*Impacted by:* C5 "Country"*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 312**Constraints**

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**6.1.23.1.16 AddressLine <AdrLine>***Presence:* [0..7]*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services, presented in free format text.*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 336**6.1.24 Price****6.1.24.1 PriceRateOrAmount3Choice***Definition:* Choice of formats for the price.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Rate <Rate>	[1..1]	Rate		259
Or}	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2	259

**6.1.24.1.1 Rate <Rate>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Price expressed as a rate, that is percentage.*Datatype:* "PercentageRate" on page 333**6.1.24.1.2 Amount <Amt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Price expressed as a currency and value.*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAnd13DecimalAmount" on page 306**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**6.1.24.2 Price7***Definition:* Type and information about a price.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		259
	Value <Val>	[1..1]	±		259

**6.1.24.2.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specification of the price type.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "YieldedOrValueType1Choice" on page 241 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Yielded <Yldd>	[1..1]	Indicator		241
Or}	ValueType <ValTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241

**6.1.24.2.2 Value <Val>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Value of the price, for example, as a currency and value.

**Value <Val>** contains one of the following elements (see "PriceRateOrAmount3Choice" on page 258 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Rate <Rate>	[1..1]	Rate		259
Or}	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2	259

## 6.1.25 Rate

### 6.1.25.1 RateType4Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the rate as a percentage or a text.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Percentage <Pctg>	[1..1]	Rate		260
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	Text		260

#### 6.1.25.1.1 Percentage <Pctg>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Ratio of the amount of interest paid during a certain period of time compared to the principal amount of the interest bearing financial instrument.

*Datatype:* "PercentageRate" on page 333

#### 6.1.25.1.2 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Rate type expressed, in an other form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

## 6.1.26 Remittance

### 6.1.26.1 RemittanceLocation7

*Definition:* Provides information on the remittance advice.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RemittanceIdentification <RmtId>	[0..1]	Text		260
	RemittanceLocationDetails <RmtLctnDtls>	[0..*]	±		261

#### 6.1.26.1.1 RemittanceIdentification <RmtId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the initiating party, to unambiguously identify the remittance information sent separately from the payment instruction, such as a remittance advice.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

### 6.1.26.1.2 RemittanceLocationDetails <RmtLctnDtls>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the location and/or delivery of the remittance information.

**RemittanceLocationDetails <RmtLctnDtls>** contains the following elements (see "RemittanceLocationData1" on page 286 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		287
	ElectronicAddress <ElctrncAdr>	[0..1]	Text		287
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]			287
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		287
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		288

### 6.1.26.2 StructuredRemittanceInformation17

*Definition:* Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>	[0..*]			263
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			265
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			265
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		265
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		266
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		266
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		266
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		267
	LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			267
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			268
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			269
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			269
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		269
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		269
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		270
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		270
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		270
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		270
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			270
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	271
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			272
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			272
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		272
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		272
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	272
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	273
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			273
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			273
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		274
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		274
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	274

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			274
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	275
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		275
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		275
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		275
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	276
	ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>	[0..1]	±		276
	CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>	[0..1]	±		277
	Invoicer <Invcr>	[0..1]	±		278
	Invoicee <Invcee>	[0..1]	±		278
	TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>	[0..1]	±		279
	GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>	[0..1]	±		279
	AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>	[0..3]	Text		280

#### 6.1.26.2.1 ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides the identification and the content of the referred document.

**ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>** contains the following  
**ReferredDocumentInformation7** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			265
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			265
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		265
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		266
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		266
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		266
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		267
	LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			267
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			268
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			269
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			269
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		269
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		269
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		270
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		270
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		270
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		270
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			270
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	271
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			272
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			272
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		272
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		272
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	272
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	273
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			273
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			273
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		274
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		274
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	274



Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			274
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	275
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		275
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		275
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		275
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	276

#### 6.1.26.2.1.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of referred document.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following **ReferredDocumentType4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			265
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		265
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		266
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		266

#### 6.1.26.2.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the type details of the referred document.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **ReferredDocumentType3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		265
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		266

#### 6.1.26.2.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Document type in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "DocumentType6Code" on page 314

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.

CodeName	Name	Definition
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROI	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.

#### 6.1.26.2.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.26.2.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.26.2.1.2 Number <Nb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### **6.1.26.2.1.3 RelatedDate <RItdDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 329

#### **6.1.26.2.1.4 LineDetails <LineDtIs>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide the content of the referred document line.

**LineDetails <LineDtls>** contains the following **DocumentLineInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			268
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			269
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			269
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		269
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		269
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		270
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		270
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		270
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		270
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			270
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	271
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			272
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			272
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		272
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		272
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	272
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	273
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			273
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			273
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		274
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		274
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	274
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			274
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	275
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		275
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		275
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		275
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	276

#### 6.1.26.2.1.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Provides identification of the document line.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentLineIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			269
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			269
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		269
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		269
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		270
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		270
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		270

#### 6.1.26.2.1.4.1.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of referred document line identification.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following **DocumentLineType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			269
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		269
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		269
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		270

#### 6.1.26.2.1.4.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the type details of the referred document line identification.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **DocumentLineType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		269
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		269

#### 6.1.26.2.1.4.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Line identification type in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDocumentLineType1Code" on page 318

#### 6.1.26.2.1.4.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### **6.1.26.2.1.4.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document line identificationtype.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### **6.1.26.2.1.4.1.2 Number <Nb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the type specified for the referred document line.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### **6.1.26.2.1.4.1.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document line.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 329

#### **6.1.26.2.1.4.2 Description <Desc>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Description associated with the document line.

*Datatype:* "Max2048Text" on page 335

#### **6.1.26.2.1.4.3 Amount <Amt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the amounts of the document line.

**Amount <Amt>** contains the following **RemittanceAmount3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	271
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			272
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			272
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		272
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		272
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	272
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	273
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			273
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			273
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		274
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		274
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	274
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			274
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	275
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		275
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		275
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		275
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	276

#### 6.1.26.2.1.4.3.1 DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount specified is the exact amount due and payable to the creditor.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.26.2.1.4.3.2 DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Amount of discount to be applied to the amount due and payable to the creditor.**DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>** contains the following **DiscountAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			272
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		272
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		272
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	272

**6.1.26.2.1.4.3.2.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the type of the amount.**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **DiscountAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		272
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		272

**6.1.26.2.1.4.3.2.1.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.*Datatype:* "ExternalDiscountAmountType1Code" on page 317**6.1.26.2.1.4.3.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.26.2.1.4.3.2.2 Amount <Amt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Amount of money, which has been typed.*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307



**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.26.2.1.4.3.3 CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of a credit note.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.26.2.1.4.3.4 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Amount of the tax.

**TaxAmount <TaxAmt>** contains the following **TaxAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			273
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		274
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		274
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	274

**6.1.26.2.1.4.3.4.1 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the amount.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **TaxAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		274
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		274

#### 6.1.26.2.1.4.3.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalTaxAmountType1Code" on page 321

#### 6.1.26.2.1.4.3.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.26.2.1.4.3.4.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money, which has been typed.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.26.2.1.4.3.5 AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies detailed information on the amount and reason of the adjustment.

**AdjustmentAmountAndReason** <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn> contains the following **DocumentAdjustment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	275
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		275
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		275
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		275

#### 6.1.26.2.1.4.3.5.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money of the document adjustment.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.26.2.1.4.3.5.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the adjustment must be subtracted or added to the total amount.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 313

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 6.1.26.2.1.4.3.5.3 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the adjustment.

*Datatype:* "Max4Text" on page 336

#### 6.1.26.2.1.4.3.5.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides further details on the document adjustment.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 334

#### **6.1.26.2.1.4.3.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money remitted.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

##### **Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### **6.1.26.2.2 ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the amounts of the referred document.

**ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>** contains the following elements (see "RemittanceAmount2" on page 235 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	236
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			237
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			237
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		237
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		237
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	237
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	238
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			238
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			238
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		239
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		239
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	239
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			239
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	240
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		240
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		240
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		240
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	241

### 6.1.26.2.3 CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference information provided by the creditor to allow the identification of the underlying documents.

**CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>** contains the following elements (see "CreditorReferenceInformation2" on page 192 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			192
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			192
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		193
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		193
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		193
	Reference <Ref>	[0..1]	Text		193

#### 6.1.26.2.4 Invoicer <Invr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the organisation issuing the invoice, when it is different from the creditor or ultimate creditor.

**Invoicer <Invr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 245 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		245
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		246
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	246
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		247

#### 6.1.26.2.5 Invoicee <Invcee>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the party to whom an invoice is issued, when it is different from the debtor or ultimate debtor.

**Invoicee <Invcee>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 245 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		245
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		246
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	246
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		247

**6.1.26.2.6 TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Provides remittance information about a payment made for tax-related purposes.**TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>** contains the following elements (see "TaxData1" on page 301 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		302
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		302
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		302
	AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		303
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		303
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		303
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	303
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	303
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		304
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		304
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		304

**6.1.26.2.7 GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Provides remittance information about a payment for garnishment-related purposes.

**GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>** contains the following elements (see "[Garnishment3](#)" on page 283 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			284
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			284
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		284
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		284
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		284
	Garnishee <Grnshee>	[0..1]	±		285
	GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>	[0..1]	±		285
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		285
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		285
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	285
	FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrncInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		286
	EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermntnInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		286

#### 6.1.26.2.8 AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>

*Presence:* [0..3]

*Definition:* Additional information, in free text form, to complement the structured remittance information.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 334

#### 6.1.26.3 RemittanceInformation21

*Definition:* Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		280
	Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		280

##### 6.1.26.3.1 Unstructured <Ustrd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in an unstructured form.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 334

##### 6.1.26.3.2 Structured <Strd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]



*Definition:* Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

**Structured <Strd>** contains the following elements (see "[StructuredRemittanceInformation17](#)" on page 261 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>	[0..*]			263
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			265
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			265
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		265
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		266
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		266
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		266
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		267
	LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			267
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			268
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			269
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			269
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		269
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		269
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		270
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		270
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		270
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		270
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			270
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	271
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			272
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			272
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		272
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		272
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	272
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	273
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			273
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			273
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		274
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		274

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	274
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			274
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	275
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		275
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		275
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		275
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	276
	ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>	[0..1]	±		276
	CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>	[0..1]	±		277
	Invoicer <Invcr>	[0..1]	±		278
	Invoicee <Invcee>	[0..1]	±		278
	TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>	[0..1]	±		279
	GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>	[0..1]	±		279
	AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>	[0..3]	Text		280

#### 6.1.26.4 Garnishment3

*Definition:* Provides remittance information about a payment for garnishment-related purposes.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			284
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			284
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		284
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		284
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		284
	Garnishee <Grnshee>	[0..1]	±		285
	GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>	[0..1]	±		285
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		285
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		285
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	285
	FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrncInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		286
	EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermntnInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		286

**6.1.26.4.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the type of garnishment.**Type <Tp>** contains the following **GarnishmentType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			284
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		284
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		284
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		284

**6.1.26.4.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Provides the type details of the garnishment.**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **GarnishmentType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		284
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		284

**6.1.26.4.1.1.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Garnishment type in a coded form.

Would suggest this to be an External Code List to contain:

GNCS Garnishment from a third party payer for Child Support

GNPD Garnishment from a Direct Payer for Child Support

GTPP Garnishment from a third party payer to taxing agency.

*Datatype:* "ExternalGarnishmentType1Code" on page 319**6.1.26.4.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the type of garnishment.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.26.4.1.2 Issuer <Issr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the garnishment type.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.26.4.2 Garnishee <Grnshee>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor, in this case, to the garnisher.**Garnishee <Grnshee>** contains the following elements (see ["PartyIdentification135"](#) on page 245 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		245
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		246
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	246
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		247

**6.1.26.4.3 GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Party on the credit side of the transaction who administers the garnishment on behalf of the ultimate beneficiary.**GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>** contains the following elements (see ["PartyIdentification135"](#) on page 245 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		245
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		246
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	246
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		247

**6.1.26.4.4 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Reference information that is specific to the agency receiving the garnishment.*Datatype:* ["Max140Text"](#) on page 334**6.1.26.4.5 Date <Dt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Date of payment which garnishment was taken from.*Datatype:* ["ISODate"](#) on page 329**6.1.26.4.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>***Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money remitted for the referred document.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.26.4.7 FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrncInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates if the person to whom the garnishment applies (that is, the ultimate debtor) has family medical insurance coverage available.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 331):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.1.26.4.8 EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeTermntnInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates if the employment of the person to whom the garnishment applies (that is, the ultimate debtor) has been terminated.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 331):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.1.26.5 RemittanceLocationData1

*Definition:* Provides additional details on the remittance advice.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		287
	ElectronicAddress <ElctrcAdr>	[0..1]	Text		287
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]			287
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		287
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		288

**6.1.26.5.1 Method <Mtd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Method used to deliver the remittance advice information.*Datatype:* "RemittanceLocationMethod2Code" on page 325

CodeName	Name	Definition
FAXI	Fax	Remittance advice information must be faxed.
EDIC	ElectronicDataInterchange	Remittance advice information must be sent through Electronic Data Interchange (EDI).
URID	UniformResourceIdentifier	Remittance advice information needs to be sent to a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). URI is a compact string of characters that uniquely identify an abstract or physical resource. URI's are the super-set of identifiers, such as URLs, email addresses, ftp sites, etc, and as such, provide the syntax for all of the identification schemes.
EMAL	EMail	Remittance advice information must be sent through e-mail.
POST	Post	Remittance advice information must be sent through postal services.
SMSM	SMS	Remittance advice information must be sent through by phone as a short message service (SMS).

**6.1.26.5.2 ElectronicAddress <ElctrncAdr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Electronic address to which an agent is to send the remittance information.*Datatype:* "Max2048Text" on page 335**6.1.26.5.3 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Postal address to which an agent is to send the remittance information.**PostalAddress <PstlAdr>** contains the following **NameAndAddress16** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		287
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		288

**6.1.26.5.3.1 Name <Nm>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and is usually used to identify that party.*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 334

**6.1.26.5.3.2 Address <Adr>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Postal address of a party.**Address <Adr>** contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress24" on page 255 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			255
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		256
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		256
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		256
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		256
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		257
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		257
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		257
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		257
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		257
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		257
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		257
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		257
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		258
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	258
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		258

**6.1.27 Securities Quantity****6.1.27.1 OriginalAndCurrentQuantities1***Definition:* Original and current value of an asset-back instrument.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FaceAmount <FaceAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		288
	AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>	[1..1]	Amount		289

**6.1.27.1.1 FaceAmount <FaceAmt>***Presence:* [1..1]



*Definition:* Quantity expressed as an amount representing the face amount, that is, the principal of a debt instrument.

*Datatype:* "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

### 6.1.27.1.2 AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Quantity expressed as an amount representing the current amortised face amount of a bond, for example, a periodic reduction/increase of a bond's principal amount.

*Datatype:* "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

## 6.1.28 Status

### 6.1.28.1 PaymentReturnReason5

*Definition:* Provides further details on the reason of the return of the transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalBankTransactionCode <OrgnlBkTxCd>	[0..1]	±	C10, C11	289
	Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		290
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			290
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		291
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		291
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		291

#### Constraints

- **ReturnReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

On Condition

/Reason/Code is within DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleNarrative1Code

And /Reason is present

And /Reason/Code is present

Following Must be True

/AdditionalInformation[\*] Must be present

### 6.1.28.1.1 OriginalBankTransactionCode <OrgnlBkTxCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Bank transaction code included in the original entry for the transaction.

*Impacted by:* C10 "DomainOrProprietaryRule", C11 "FamilyAndSubFamilyRule"

**OriginalBankTransactionCode <OrgnIBkTxCd>** contains the following elements (see "BankTransactionCodeStructure4" on page 86 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		86
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			87
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		87
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		87

#### Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True

/Domain Must be present

Or /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

#### 6.1.28.1.2 Originator <Orgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that issues the return.

**Originator <Orgtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 245 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		245
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		246
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	246
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		247

#### 6.1.28.1.3 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the return.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **ReturnReason5Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		291
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		291

**6.1.28.1.3.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Reason for the return, as published in an external reason code list.*Datatype:* "ExternalReturnReason1Code" on page 321**6.1.28.1.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Reason for the return, in a proprietary form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.28.1.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Further details on the return reason.*Datatype:* "Max105Text" on page 334**6.1.28.2 EntryStatus1Choice***Definition:* Specifies the status of an entry on the books of the account servicer.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		291
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		291

**6.1.28.2.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Entry status, in a coded form.*Datatype:* "ExternalEntryStatus1Code" on page 318**6.1.28.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Entry status, in a proprietary form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.29 System Identification****6.1.29.1 ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice***Definition:* Choice of a clearing system identifier.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		292
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		292

**6.1.29.1.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Identification of a clearing system, in a coded form as published in an external list.*Datatype:* "ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code" on page 317**6.1.29.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Identification code for a clearing system, that has not yet been identified in the list of clearing systems.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.30 Tax****6.1.30.1 TaxParty1***Definition:* Details about the entity involved in the tax paid or to be paid.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		292
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		292
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		292

**6.1.30.1.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Tax identification number of the creditor.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.30.1.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.30.1.3 TaxType <TaxTp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Type of tax payer.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.30.2 TaxRecord3***Definition:* Set of elements used to define the tax record.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		293
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		293
	CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		293
	DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		293
	CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		294
	FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		294
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		294
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			294
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		294
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	295
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	295
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			295
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		296
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	296
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		296

#### 6.1.30.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* High level code to identify the type of tax details.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.30.2.2 Category <Ctgy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the tax code as published by the tax authority.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.30.2.3 CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides further details of the category tax code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.30.2.4 DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Code provided by local authority to identify the status of the party that has drawn up the settlement document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.30.2.5 CertificateIdentification <CertId>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identification number of the tax report as assigned by the taxing authority.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.30.2.6 FormsCode <FrmsCd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identifies, in a coded form, on which template the tax report is to be provided.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335**6.1.30.2.7 Period <Prd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.**Period <Prd>** contains the following elements (see "TaxPeriod3" on page 296 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		297
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		297
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		298

**6.1.30.2.8 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the amount of the tax record.**TaxAmount <TaxAmt>** contains the following **TaxAmount3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		294
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	295
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	295
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			295
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		296
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	296

**6.1.30.2.8.1 Rate <Rate>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the tax.*Datatype:* "PercentageRate" on page 333

**6.1.30.2.8.2 TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Amount of money on which the tax is based.*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.30.2.8.3 TotalAmount <TtlAmt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Total amount that is the result of the calculation of the tax for the record.*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.30.2.8.4 Details <DtIs>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the tax period and amount.**Details <DtIs>** contains the following **TaxRecordDetails3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		296
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	296

**6.1.30.2.8.4.1 Period <Prd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.**Period <Prd>** contains the following elements (see "TaxPeriod3" on page 296 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		297
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		297
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		298

**6.1.30.2.8.4.2 Amount <Amt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Underlying tax amount related to the specified period.*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.30.2.9 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Further details of the tax record.*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 334**6.1.30.3 TaxPeriod3***Definition:* Period of time details related to the tax payment.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		297
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		297
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		298



**6.1.30.3.1 Year <Yr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Year related to the tax payment.*Datatype:* "ISOYear" on page 338**6.1.30.3.2 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identification of the period related to the tax payment.*Datatype:* "TaxRecordPeriod1Code" on page 325

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.

CodeName	Name	Definition
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

### 6.1.30.3.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the tax report is provided.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "DatePeriod2" on page 189 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		189
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		189

### 6.1.30.4 TaxInformation10

*Definition:* Details about tax paid, or to be paid, to the government in accordance with the law, including pre-defined parameters such as thresholds and type of account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		298
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		299
	AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		299
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		299
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		299
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	299
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	300
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		300
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		300
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		300

#### 6.1.30.4.1 Creditor <Cdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party on the credit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

**Creditor <Cdtr>** contains the following elements (see "TaxParty1" on page 292 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		292
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		292
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		292

**6.1.30.4.2 Debtor <Dbtr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Party on the debit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains the following elements (see ["TaxParty2"](#) on page 305 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		305
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		305
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		305
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			305
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		305
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		306

**6.1.30.4.3 AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Territorial part of a country to which the tax payment is related.*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 335**6.1.30.4.4 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Tax reference information that is specific to a taxing agency.*Datatype:* ["Max140Text"](#) on page 334**6.1.30.4.5 Method <Mtd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Method used to indicate the underlying business or how the tax is paid.*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 335**6.1.30.4.6 TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Total amount of money on which the tax is based.*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 307**Constraints**

- ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.30.4.7 **TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money as result of the calculation of the tax.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

##### **Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.30.4.8 **Date <Dt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date by which tax is due.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 329

#### 6.1.30.4.9 **SequenceNumber <SeqNb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the tax report.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 332

#### 6.1.30.4.10 **Record <Rcrd>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Record of tax details.

**Record <Rcrd>** contains the following elements (see "TaxRecord3" on page 292 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		293
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		293
	CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		293
	DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		293
	CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		294
	FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		294
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		294
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			294
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		294
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	295
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	295
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			295
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		296
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	296
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		296

### 6.1.30.5 TaxData1

*Definition:* Details about tax paid, or to be paid, to the government in accordance with the law, including pre-defined parameters such as thresholds and type of account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		302
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		302
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		302
	AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		303
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		303
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		303
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	303
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	303
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		304
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		304
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		304

**6.1.30.5.1 Creditor <Cdtr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Party on the credit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.**Creditor <Cdtr>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxParty1](#)" on page 292 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		292
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		292
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		292

**6.1.30.5.2 Debtor <Dbtr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Party on the debit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxParty2](#)" on page 305 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		305
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		305
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		305
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			305
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		305
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		306

**6.1.30.5.3 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor, in this case, to the taxing authority.**UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxParty2](#)" on page 305 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		305
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		305
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		305
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			305
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		305
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		306

#### 6.1.30.5.4 AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Territorial part of a country to which the tax payment is related.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.30.5.5 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Tax reference information that is specific to a taxing agency.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 334

#### 6.1.30.5.6 Method <Mtd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Method used to indicate the underlying business or how the tax is paid.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.30.5.7 TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money on which the tax is based.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.30.5.8 TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money as result of the calculation of the tax.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 307

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.30.5.9 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date by which tax is due.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 329

#### 6.1.30.5.10 SequenceNumber <SeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the tax report.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 332

#### 6.1.30.5.11 Record <Rcrd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Record of tax details.

**Record <Rcrd>** contains the following elements (see "TaxRecord3" on page 292 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		293
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		293
	CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		293
	DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		293
	CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		294
	FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		294
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		294
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			294
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		294
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	295
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	295
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			295
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		296
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	296
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		296



### 6.1.30.6 TaxParty2

*Definition:* Details about the entity involved in the tax paid or to be paid.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		305
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		305
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		305
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			305
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		305
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		306

#### 6.1.30.6.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Tax identification number of the debtor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.30.6.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.30.6.3 TaxType <TaxTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of tax payer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

#### 6.1.30.6.4 Authorisation <Authstn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Details of the authorised tax paying party.

**Authorisation <Authstn>** contains the following **TaxAuthorisation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		305
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		306

##### 6.1.30.6.4.1 Title <Titl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Title or position of debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 335

**6.1.30.6.4.2 Name <Nm>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Name of the debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 334**6.2 Message Datatypes****6.2.1 Amount****6.2.1.1 ActiveCurrencyAndAmount***Definition:* A number of monetary units specified in an active currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.*Type:* Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveCurrencyCode" on page 308

**Format**

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.2.1.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAnd13DecimalAmount***Definition:* A number of monetary units specified in an active or a historic currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217. The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) is not checked as per ISO 4217: It must be lesser than or equal to 13.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

*Type:* Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308

**Format**

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	13

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**6.2.1.3 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount**

*Definition:* A number of monetary units specified in an active or a historic currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

*Type:* Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 308

**Format**

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.2.1.4 ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount**

*Definition:* Number of monetary units specified in a currency where the unit of currency is implied by the context and compliant with ISO 4217. The decimal separator is a dot.

Note: a zero amount is considered a positive amount.

Type: Amount

#### Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

## 6.2.2 CodeSet

### 6.2.2.1 ActiveCurrencyCode

*Definition:* A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

Type: CodeSet

#### Format

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}
---------	------------

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### 6.2.2.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode

*Definition:* A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme, as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

Type: CodeSet

#### Format

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}
---------	------------

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### 6.2.2.3 AddressType2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the type of address.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

### 6.2.2.4 AttendanceContext1Code

*Definition:* Human attendance at the POI location during the transaction.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ATTD	Attended	Attended payment, with an attendant.
SATT	SemiAttended	Semi-attended, including self checkout. An attendant supervises several payment, and could be called to help the cardholder.
UATT	Unattended	Unattended payment, no attendant present.

### 6.2.2.5 AuthenticationEntity1Code

*Definition:* Entity or object in charge of verifying the cardholder authenticity.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ICCD	ICC	Application in the chip card (Integrated Circuit Card), for instance an offline PIN verification.
AGNT	AuthorisedAgent	Authorisation agent of the issuer.
MERC	Merchant	Merchant (for example signature verification by the attendant).

### 6.2.2.6 AuthenticationMethod1Code

*Definition:* Method used to authenticate a cardholder.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
UKNW	UnknownMethod	Authentication method is performed unknown.
BYPs	Bypass	Authentication bypassed by the merchant.
NPIN	OnLinePIN	On-line PIN authentication (Personal Identification Number).
FPIN	OfflinePIN	Off-line PIN authentication (Personal Identification Number).
CPSG	SignatureCapture	Electronic signature capture (handwritten signature).
PPSG	PaperSignature	Handwritten paper signature.
MANU	ManualVerification	Manual verification, for example passport or drivers license.
MERC	MerchantAuthentication	Merchant-related authentication.
SCRT	SecureCertificate	Electronic commerce transaction secured with the X.509 certificate of a customer.
SNCT	SecureNoCertificate	Secure electronic transaction without cardholder certificate.
SCNL	SecuredChannel	Channel-encrypted transaction.

### 6.2.2.7 CardDataReading1Code

*Definition:* Type of reading of the card data.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
TAGC	Tag	Tag reading capabilities (RFID, etc.).
PHYS	Physical	Keyboard entry or OCR reading of embossing or printed data, either at time of transaction or after the event.
BRCD	BarCode	Bar code.
MGST	MagneticStripe	Magnetic stripe.
CICC	ICC	ICC (Integrated Circuit Card) with contact containing software applications conform to ISO 7816.
DFLE	AccountData	Account data on file.
CTLS	ProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader.
ECTL	EMVProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader, with application conform to the standard EMV (standard initiated by Europay, Mastercard and Visa).

### 6.2.2.8 CardholderVerificationCapability1Code

*Definition:* Cardholder verification capabilities of the POI (Personal Identification Number) performing the transaction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MNSG	ManualSignature	Manual signature verification.
NPIN	OnLinePIN	Online PIN (Personal Identification Number).
FCPN	OfflinePINCLEAR	Offline PIN in clear (Personal Identification Number).
FEPN	OfflinePINEncrypted	Offline PIN encrypted (Personal Identification Number).
FDSG	OfflineDigitalSignature	Offline digital signature analysis.
FBIO	OfflineBiometrics	Offline biometrics.
MNVR	ManualVerification	Other manual verification, for example passport or drivers license.
FBIG	OfflineBiographics	Offline biographics.
APKI	AccountDigitalSignature	Account based digital signature.
PKIS	PKISignature	PKI (Public Key Infrastructure) based digital signature.
CHDT	CardholderData	Cardholder authentication data.
SCEC	SecureElectronicCommerce	Three domain secure (three domain secure authentication of the cardholder).

### 6.2.2.9 CardPaymentServiceType2Code

*Definition:* Service provided by the card payment transaction, in addition to the main service.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
AGGR	Aggregation	Aggregation of low payments.
DCCV	DCC	Dynamic currency conversion (DCC).
GRTT	Gratuity	Card payment with gratuity.
INSP	Instalment	Instalment payment.
LOYT	Loyalty	Loyalty services.
NRES	NoShow	No show after reservation.
PUCO	PurchaseCorporate	Purchase and corporate data.
RECP	RecurringPayment	Recurring payment.
SOAF	SolicitedAvailableFunds	Solicited available funds.
UNAF	UnsolicitedAvailableFunds	Unsolicited available funds.
VCAU	VoiceAuthorisation	Voice authorisation.

### 6.2.2.10 ChargeBearerType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies which party(ies) will pay charges due for processing of the instruction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DEBT	BorneByDebtor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the debtor.
CRED	BorneByCreditor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the creditor.
SHAR	Shared	In a credit transfer context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the debtor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the creditor. In a direct debit context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the creditor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the debtor.
SLEV	FollowingServiceLevel	Charges are to be applied following the rules agreed in the service level and/or scheme.

### 6.2.2.11 CopyDuplicate1Code

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CODU	CopyDuplicate	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent.
COPY	Copy	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.
DUPL	Duplicate	Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.

### 6.2.2.12 CountryCode

*Definition:* Code to identify a country, a dependency, or another area of particular geopolitical interest, on the basis of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

*Type:* CodeSet

#### Format

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}



**Constraints**

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**6.2.2.13 CreditDebitCode**

*Definition:* Specifies if an operation is an increase or a decrease.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

**6.2.2.14 CSCManagement1Code**

*Definition:* CSC (Card Security Code) management associated with the transaction.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
PRST	CSCPresent	Card security code present.
BYPS	CSCByPass	Card security code by-passed or not provided by the merchant.
UNRD	CSCUnread	Card security code unreadable.
NCSC	NoCSC	No card security code imprint.

**6.2.2.15 DocumentType3Code**

*Definition:* Specifies a type of financial or commercial document.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
RADM	RemittanceAdviceMessage	Document is a remittance advice sent separately from the current transaction.
RPIN	RelatedPaymentInstruction	Document is a linked payment instruction to which the current payment instruction is related, for example, in a cover scenario.
FXDR	ForeignExchangeDealReference	Document is a pre-agreed or pre-arranged foreign exchange transaction to which the payment transaction refers.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.
SCOR	StructuredCommunicationReference	Document is a structured communication reference provided by the creditor to identify the referred transaction.

### 6.2.2.16 DocumentType6Code

*Definition:* Specifies a type of financial or commercial document.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROI	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.

### 6.2.2.17 ExternalAccountIdentification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external account identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.18 ExternalBalanceSubType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the balance sub-type, as published in an external balance sub-type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.19 ExternalBalanceType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the balance type, as published in an external balance type code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.20 ExternalBankTransactionDomain1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the bank transaction code domain, as published in an external bank transaction code domain code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.21 ExternalBankTransactionFamily1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the bank transaction code family, as published in an external bank transaction code family code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.22 ExternalBankTransactionSubFamily1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the bank transaction code sub-family, as published in an external bank transaction code sub-family code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.23 ExternalCardTransactionCategory1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the category of card transaction in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.24 ExternalCashAccountType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use, of the cash account in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.25 ExternalChargeType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use, of the charges in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 6.2.2.26 ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the clearing system identification code, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	5

### 6.2.2.27 ExternalCreditLineType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external credit line type code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code set published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 6.2.2.28 ExternalDiscountAmountType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use, of the amount in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
-----------	---

maxLength	4
-----------	---

### 6.2.2.29 ExternalDocumentLineType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the document line type as published in an external document type code list.

*Type:* CodeSet

#### Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 6.2.2.30 ExternalEntryStatus1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the status of an entry on the books of the account servicer, as published in an external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

#### Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 6.2.2.31 ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external financial institution identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

#### Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 6.2.2.32 ExternalFinancialInstrumentIdentificationType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external financial instrument identification type scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.33 ExternalGarnishmentType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the garnishment type as published in an external document type code list.

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.34 ExternalLocalInstrument1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external local instrument code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	35

**6.2.2.35 ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external organisation identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.36 ExternalPersonIdentification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external person identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 6.2.2.37 ExternalProxyAccountType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external proxy account type code, as published in the proxy account type external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 6.2.2.38 ExternalPurpose1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external purpose code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 6.2.2.39 ExternalReportingSource1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the reporting source, as published in an external reporting source code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 6.2.2.40 ExternalRePresentmentReason1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external representment reason code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters. The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.



*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 6.2.2.41 ExternalReturnReason1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the return reason, as published in an external return reason code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 6.2.2.42 ExternalTaxAmountType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use, of the amount in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 6.2.2.43 ExternalTechnicalInputChannel1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the technical input channel, as published in an external technical input channel code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 6.2.2.44 FloorLimitType1Code

*Definition:* Indicates whether the floor limit applies to credit, to debit or to both credit and debit entries.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRED	Credit	Floor limit applies to credit entries.
DEBT	Debit	Floor limit applies to debit entries.
BOTH	Both	Floor limit applies to both credit and debit entries.

### 6.2.2.45 InterestType1Code

*Definition:* Indicates which type of interest is applied to a balance left on an account.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDY	IntraDay	During or within a business day.
OVN	OverNight	Period of time between the end of a business day and the start of the next business day (usually the day after).

### 6.2.2.46 ISO2ALanguageCode

*Definition:* Identification of the language name according to the ISO 639-1 codes. The type is validated by the list of values coded with two alphabetic characters, defined in the standard.

*Type:* CodeSet

#### Format

pattern [a-z]{2,2}

### 6.2.2.47 NamePrefix2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

### 6.2.2.48 OnLineCapability1Code

*Definition:* On-line and off-line capabilities of the POI (Point Of Interaction).

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
OFLN	OffLine	Off-line only capable.
ONLN	OnLine	On-line only capable.

CodeName	Name	Definition
SMON	SemiOffLine	Off-line capable with possible on-line requests to the acquirer.

#### 6.2.2.49 PartyType3Code

*Definition:* Identification of the type of entity involved in a transaction.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
OPOI	OriginatingPOI	Point Of Interaction initiating the card payment transaction.
MERC	Merchant	Merchant providing goods and service in the card payment transaction.
ACCP	Acceptor	Card acceptor, party accepting the card and presenting transaction data to the acquirer.
ITAG	IntermediaryAgent	Party acting on behalf of other parties to process or forward data to other parties.
ACQR	Acquirer	Entity acquiring card transactions.
CISS	CardIssuer	Party that issues cards.
DLIS	Delegatelssuer	Party to whom the card issuer delegates to authorise card payment transactions.

#### 6.2.2.50 PartyType4Code

*Definition:* Entity assigning an identification (for example merchant, acceptor, acquirer, tax authority, etc.).

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MERC	Merchant	Merchant providing goods and service in the card payment transaction.
ACCP	Acceptor	Card acceptor, party accepting the card and presenting transaction data to the acquirer.
ITAG	IntermediaryAgent	Party acting on behalf of other parties to process or forward data to other parties.
ACQR	Acquirer	Entity acquiring card transactions.
CISS	CardIssuer	Party that issues cards.
TAXH	TaxAuthority	Tax authority.

#### 6.2.2.51 POIComponentType1Code

*Definition:* Generic component type belonging to a POI (Point of Interaction) Terminal.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
SOFT	Soft	Payment or other software application.
EMVK	EMVKernel	EMV application kernel (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
EMVO	EMVLevel1	EMV physical interface (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
MRIT	MerchantInterface	Merchant interface.
CHIT	CardholderInterface	Cardholder Interface.
SECM	SecureModule	Security module.
PEDV	PINEntryDevice	Personal identification number (or PIN) entry device (PED).

### 6.2.2.52 PreferredContactMethod1Code

*Definition:* Preferred method used to reach the individual contact within an organisation.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.

### 6.2.2.53 PriceValueType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies a type of value of the price.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DISC	Discount	Price expressed as a number of percentage points below par, for example, a discount price of 2.0% equals a price of 98 when par is 100.
PREM	Premium	Price expressed as a number of percentage points above par, for example, a premium price of 2.0% equals a price of 102 when par is 100.
PARV	Par	Price is the face amount.

### 6.2.2.54 QueryType3Code

*Definition:* Specifies the nature of the request, that is whether all information be returned or only information that has changed since the last similar request was returned.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ALLL	All	Specifies that the query requests that all matching items be returned.
CHNG	Changed	Specifies that the query requests that only new matching items since the last similar query be returned.
MODF	Modified	Specifies that the query requests that only items that have changed since the last query be returned.

### 6.2.2.55 RemittanceLocationMethod2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the method used to deliver the remittance advice information.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FAXI	Fax	Remittance advice information must be faxed.
EDIC	ElectronicDataInterchange	Remittance advice information must be sent through Electronic Data Interchange (EDI).
URID	UniformResourceIdentifier	Remittance advice information needs to be sent to a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). URI is a compact string of characters that uniquely identify an abstract or physical resource. URI's are the super-set of identifiers, such as URLs, email addresses, ftp sites, etc, and as such, provide the syntax for all of the identification schemes.
EMAL	EMail	Remittance advice information must be sent through e-mail.
POST	Post	Remittance advice information must be sent through postal services.
SMSM	SMS	Remittance advice information must be sent through by phone as a short message service (SMS).

### 6.2.2.56 TaxRecordPeriod1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the period related to the tax payment.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

### 6.2.2.57 TransactionChannel1Code

*Definition:* Identifies the type of the communication channels used by the cardholder to the acceptor system.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MAIL	MailOrder	Mail order.
TLPH	TelephoneOrder	Telephone order.
ECOM	ElectronicCommerce	Electronic commerce.
TVPY	TelevisionPayment	Payment on television.

### 6.2.2.58 TransactionEnvironment1Code

*Definition:* Indicates the environment of the transaction.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MERC	Merchant	Merchant environment.
PRIV	Private	Private environment.
PUBL	Public	Public environment.

### 6.2.2.59 UnitOfMeasure1Code

*Definition:* Unit of measure of the item purchased.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
PIEC	Piece	Standard length of cloth, wallpaper, as an item for sale or amount of a substance.
TONS	Ton	Measure of weight, in Britain 2240lb (long ton) and in the US 2000lb (short ton).
FOOT	Foot	Unit of length equal to 1/3 yard.
GBGA	GBGallon	Unit of volume that is equal to 8 pints.
USGA	USGallon	Unit of volume that is equal to 8 pints.
GRAM	Gram	Unit of measure that is equal to a 1,000th of a kilo.
INCH	Inch	Measure of length equal to 2.54 cm.
KILO	Kilogram	Basic unit of mass in the SI system, 1000 grams.
PUND	Pound	Unit of weight equal to 0.454 kilograms.
METR	Metre	Unit of length in the metric system, equal to 39.37 inches.
CMET	Centimetre	Unit of measure that is equal to one hundredth of a metre.
MMET	Millimetre	Unit of measure that is a thousandth of one metre.
LITR	Litre	Unit of volume that is equal to a thousand cubic centimetres.
CELI	Centilitre	Unit of volume that is equal to one hundredth of a litre.
MILI	Millilitre	Unit of volume that is equal to one thousandth of a litre.
GBOU	GBOunce	Unit of weight equal to a sixteenth of a pound.
USOU	USOunce	Unit of weight equal to a sixteenth of a pound.

CodeName	Name	Definition
GBQA	GBQuart	Unit of volume that is equal to 2 pints.
USQA	USQuart	Unit of volume that is equal to 2 pints.
GBPI	GBPint	Unit of volume that is equal to 568 cubic centimetres.
USPI	USPint	Unit of volume that is equal to 473 cubic centimetres.
MILE	Mile	Unit of length equal to 1, 760 yards.
KMET	Kilometre	Unit of measure that is equal to 1, 000 meters.
YARD	Yard	Unit of length equal to 3 feet or 0.9144 metre.
SQKI	SquareKilometre	Measure of a surface, one kilometre by one kilometre.
HECT	Hectare	Unit of measure that is equal to 10, 000 square meters.
ARES	Are	Unit of measure equal to a 100 square meters.
SMET	SquareMetre	Measure of a surface, one metre by one metre.
SCMT	SquareCentimetre	Measure of a surface, one centimetre by one centimetre.
SMIL	SquareMillimetre	Measure of a surface, one millimetre by one millimetre.
SQMI	SquareMile	Measure of a surface, one mile by one mile.
SQYA	SquareYard	Measure of a surface, one yard by one yard.
SQFO	SquareFoot	Measure of a surface, one foot by one foot.
SQIN	SquareInch	Measure of a surface, one inch by one inch.
ACRE	Acre	Unit of measure equal to 4, 840 square yards.

### 6.2.2.60 UserInterface2Code

*Definition:* Type of interface to display a message.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MDSP	MerchantDisplay	Merchant display or interface.
CDSP	CardholderDisplay	Cardholder display or interface.



## 6.2.3 Date

### 6.2.3.1 ISODate

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar year expressed in the YYYY-MM-DD format. This representation is defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

*Type:* Date

## 6.2.4 DateTime

### 6.2.4.1 ISODateTime

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time defined by a mandatory date and a mandatory time component, expressed in either UTC time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time with UTC offset format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss+/-hh:mm), or local time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

*Type:* DateTime

## 6.2.5 IdentifierSet

### 6.2.5.1 AnyBICDec2014Identifier

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial or non-financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority, as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* SWIFT; AnyBICIdentifier

#### Format

pattern [A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

**Constraints**

- **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**6.2.5.2 BICFIDec2014Identifier**

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* SWIFT; BICIdentifier

**Format**

pattern [A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

**Constraints**

- **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**6.2.5.3 IBAN2007Identifier**

*Definition:* An identifier used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer at a financial institution, as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 13616: 2007 - "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* National Banking Association; International Bank Account Number (ISO 13616)

**Format**

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}[0-9]{2,2}[a-zA-Z0-9]{1,30}

**Constraints**

- **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**6.2.5.4 ISINOct2015Identifier**

*Definition:* International Securities Identification Number (ISIN). A numbering system designed by the United Nation's International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO). The ISIN is composed of a 2-character prefix representing the country of issue, followed by the national security number (if one exists), and a check digit. Each country has a national numbering agency that assigns ISIN numbers for securities in that country.

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* ANNA; ISINIdentifier

**Format**

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{9,9}[0-9]{1,1}

**6.2.5.5 LEIdentifier**

*Definition:* Legal Entity Identifier is a code allocated to a party as described in ISO 17442 "Financial Services - Legal Entity Identifier (LEI)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* Global LEI System; LEIdentifier

**Format**

pattern [A-Z0-9]{18,18}[0-9]{2,2}

**6.2.5.6 UUIDv4Identifier**

*Definition:* Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) version 4, as described in IETF RFC 4122 "Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) URN Namespace".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* RFC4122; UUIDv4

**Format**

pattern [a-f0-9]{8}-[a-f0-9]{4}-4[a-f0-9]{3}-[89ab][a-f0-9]{3}-[a-f0-9]{12}

**6.2.6 Indicator****6.2.6.1 ChargeIncludedIndicator**

*Definition:* Indicates whether charges have already been included.

*Type:* Indicator

*Meaning When True:* Included

*Meaning When False:* Pre-advised

**6.2.6.2 TrueFalseIndicator**

*Definition:* A flag indicating a True or False value.

*Type:* Indicator

*Meaning When True:* True

*Meaning When False:* False

**6.2.6.3 YesNoIndicator**

*Definition:* Indicates a "Yes" or "No" type of answer for an element.

*Type:* Indicator

*Meaning When True:* Yes

*Meaning When False:* No

## 6.2.7 Quantity

### 6.2.7.1 DecimalNumber

*Definition:* Number of objects represented as a decimal number, for example 0.75 or 45.6.

*Type:* Quantity

**Format**

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	17

### 6.2.7.2 NonNegativeDecimalNumber

*Definition:* Number of objects represented as a non negative decimal number, for example, 0.75 or 45.6.

*Type:* Quantity

**Format**

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	17

### 6.2.7.3 Number

*Definition:* Number of objects represented as an integer.

*Type:* Quantity

**Format**

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	0

## 6.2.8 Rate

### 6.2.8.1 BaseOneRate

*Definition:* Rate expressed as a decimal, for example, 0.7 is 7/10 and 70%.

*Type:* Rate

**Format**

totalDigits	11
fractionDigits	10
baseValue	1.0

### 6.2.8.2 PercentageRate

*Definition:* Rate expressed as a percentage, that is, in hundredths, for example, 0.7 is 7/10 of a percent, and 7.0 is 7%.

*Type:* Rate

#### Format

totalDigits	11
fractionDigits	10
baseValue	100.0

## 6.2.9 Text

### 6.2.9.1 Exact1NumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with an exact length of 1 digit.

*Type:* Text

#### Format

pattern	[0-9]
---------	-------

### 6.2.9.2 Exact3NumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with an exact length of 3 digits.

*Type:* Text

#### Format

pattern	[0-9]{3}
---------	----------

### 6.2.9.3 Exact4AlphaNumericText

*Definition:* Specifies an alphanumeric string with a length of 4 characters.

*Type:* Text

#### Format

pattern	[a-zA-Z0-9]{4}
---------	----------------

### 6.2.9.4 Max1025Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 1025 characters.

*Type:* Text

#### Format

minLength	1
maxLength	1025

### 6.2.9.5 Max105Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 105 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	105

### 6.2.9.6 Max128Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 128 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	128

### 6.2.9.7 Max140Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 140 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	140

### 6.2.9.8 Max15NumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 15 digits.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern	[0-9]{1,15}
---------	-------------

### 6.2.9.9 Max15PlusSignedNumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 15 digits and may be prefixed with a plus sign.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern	[+]{0,1}[0-9]{1,15}
---------	---------------------

### 6.2.9.10 Max16Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 16 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	16

### 6.2.9.11 Max2048Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 2048 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	2048

### 6.2.9.12 Max34Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 34 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	34

### 6.2.9.13 Max350Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 350 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	350

### 6.2.9.14 Max35Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	35

### 6.2.9.15 Max3NumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 3 digits.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern	[0-9]{1,3}
---------	------------

#### 6.2.9.16 Max4Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### 6.2.9.17 Max500Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 500 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	500

#### 6.2.9.18 Max5NumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 5 digits.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern	[0-9]{1,5}
---------	------------

#### 6.2.9.19 Max70Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 70characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	70

#### 6.2.9.20 Min2Max3NumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a minimum length of 2 digits, and a maximum length of 3 digits.

*Type:* Text



**Format**

pattern [0-9]{2,3}

**6.2.9.21 Min3Max4NumericText**

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a minimum length of 3 digits, and a maximum length of 4 digits.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern [0-9]{3,4}

**6.2.9.22 Min8Max28NumericText**

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a minimum length of 8 digits, and a maximum length of 28 digits.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern [0-9]{8,28}

**6.2.9.23 PhoneNumber**

*Definition:* The collection of information which identifies a specific phone or FAX number as defined by telecom services.

It consists of a "+" followed by the country code (from 1 to 3 characters) then a "-" and finally, any combination of numbers, "(", ")", "+" and "-" (up to 30 characters).

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern \+[0-9]{1,3}-[0-9()+-]{1,30}

**6.2.10 Time****6.2.10.1 ISOTime**

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar day expressed in either UTC time format (hh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time with UTC offset format (hh:mm:ss.sss+/-hh:mm), or local time format (hh:mm:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

*Type:* Time

## **6.2.11      Year**

### **6.2.11.1 ISOYear**

*Definition:* Year represented by YYYY (ISO 8601).

*Type:* Year

## **6.2.12      YearMonth**

### **6.2.12.1 ISOYearMonth**

*Definition:* Month within a particular calendar year represented by YYYY-MM (ISO 8601).

*Type:* YearMonth